OLD FRENCH SERIES · VOLUME 31

The Roman de Brut

Wace

Li Romans de Brut

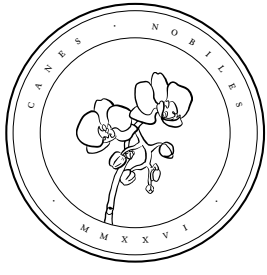
The Roman de Brut

Part Two: Merlin and Arthur

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order



CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 31 of the Canes Nobiles Old French interlinear texts

The Old French text follows Le Roux de Lincy's text, Le Roman de Brut par Wace, poète du XIIe siècle, tomes I–II (Rouen, 1836–1838), verses 7493–15300

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

This second part of the Brut begins at Le Roux de Lincy's verse 7493, with Vortigern's tower and Merlin, and runs to the end of the poem. The spelling is Le Roux de Lincy's, whose accents are not consistent (bele and bèle, Elduine and Helduine). The verse number the margin carries every fifth row counts the verses as they stand, running on from the first part: his own figures in the second tome repeat or skip at several places.

CONTENTS

I · Vortigern's Tower, and Merlin 7
II · Aurelius Against Hengist 32
III · The Giants' Dance, and Uther Pendragon 66
IV · Uther and Igraine 100
V · Arthur Against the Saxons 134
VI · The Round Table, Norway, and Gaul 172
VII · The Feast at Caerleon 212
VIII · Rome's Letter, and the Council 246
IX · The Crossing, and the Giant of the Mount 283
X · The Embassy to Lucius 314
XI · Peredur, and the Prisoners' Road 342
XII · The Battle of Saussy 370
XIII · Mordred's Treason, and Camlann 410
XIV · After Arthur, and Gormund 433
XV · Augustine, and the English Kings 461
XVI · Cadwallo and Edwin 491
XVII · Oswald, Penda, and Cadwallader 515

Vortigern's Tower, and Merlin

I

Fearing Constantine's sons, Vortigern begins a tower on Mount Rir, but each night the day's work sinks, and his soothsayers say the mortar must be wet with the blood of a man born without a father. At Ermendin the messengers hear Dinabus taunt Merlin with having none. Merlin's mother, a king's daughter become a nun, tells the king how an unseen being lay with her, and the clerk Malgant explains the incubi. Merlin proves the soothsayers liars: a pool lies under the tower, and when it is drained a white dragon and a red one rise and fight. Wace will not translate his prophecies, but Merlin foretells Vortigern's death by fire. Aurelius and Uther land, Aurelius is made lord, and they burn Vortigern in his castle of Gencire with his wife.

Venir fist ses sortisséors
Come he-made his soothsayers
et ses sages devinéors,
and his wise soothsayers
et quist consel que il fera,
and sought counsel what he will-do
en quel guise se maintanra
in what guise himself he-will-maintain
se plus fort gent l'envaïssoit, 7480
if more strong folk him-would-invade
com faitement se contandroit?
how in-manner himself he-would-conduct
Des frères Constant se douta,
Of-the brothers (of-)Constant himself he-feared
ne set com d'els se desfendra.
not he-knows how from-them himself he-will-defend

Loë li ont si consillier
Advised to-him they-have his counselors
une tor face édéfier
a tower he-may-make build
que jà par force n'en sois prise,
that ever by force not-thereof it-may-be taken
ne par engin d'ome conquise.
nor by device of-man conquered
Dedens soit, quant ele ert garnie,
Within let-him-be when it will-be garrisoned
que gent averse ne l'ocie.
that folk hostile not him-may-kill
Lors fist eslire et esgarder
Then he-made choose and look-for
liu convenable à tor fonder:
place fitting for tower to-found
à gré li vint et à plaisir
to liking to-him it-came and to pleasure
qu'il la feroit al mont de Rir.
that-he it would-make on-the mount of Rir
Maçons quist, les millors qu'il sot
Masons he-sought the best that-he knew
et fist olvrer com ains qu'il pot.
and he-made work as soonest that-he could
Cil ont commencié à olvrer,
Those have begun to work
pière, mortier à aloer;
stone mortar to set

mais quant qu'il ont le jor olvré
but whatever that-they have the day worked
est la nuit à tere afondré;
is the night to earth sunk
quant plus olvroient haltement,
when more they-worked high
et plus chaoit al fondement.
and more it-fell at-the foundation
Ainsi firent pluisors jornées
Thus they-did many days
qui an tère sont afondrées.
which into earth are sunk
Quant li rois sot et aparçut
When the king knew and perceived
que s'ovraigne altrement ne crut,
that his-work otherwise not grew
à ses devins em prist consel:
of his soothsayers thereof he-took counsel
par foi, fait-il, jo me mervel
by faith says-he I myself marvel
que ceste oevre puet devenir:
what this work can become
ne la puet tere sostenir,
not it can earth sustain
gardés, enquerés que ce soit
look inquire what this may-be
et commant tere là tandroit.
and how earth there would-hold
Cil ont deviné et sortoï,
Those have divined and cast-lots

mais, puet cel estre, il ont menti,
but can that be they have lied
qui un home trover poroit
who a man could find
qui tot sans père nés seroit,
who all without father born would-be
océist le, le sang prensist
might-kill him the blood might-take
et od le mortier l'espandist,
and with the mortar it-might-spread
par ce poroit s'oevre durer
by this could his-work last
si poroit aséur olvrer.
so he-could secure work
Dont a fait li rois envoier
Then has made the king send
par tote la tere et cerquier
through all the land and search
se jà tex hom estoit trovés
if ever such man was found
que devant lui fust amenés.
that before him he-might-be brought
Torné se sunt li coréor
Turned themselves are the runners
par pluisors contrées entor
through many countries around
et vunt ensamble doi et doi,
and they-go together two and two
quièrent par tout, de par le roi,
they-seek through all on behalf-of the king

et vunt tel home demandant,
and they-go such man asking
mais n'en trovèrent tant ne quant.
but not-thereof they-found so-much nor how-much
Dui qui alèrent lor cemin
Two who went their way
vinrent ensamble à Ermendin.
came together to Ermendin
Devant la cité, à l'entrée,
Before the city at the-entrance
avoit d'enfans grant aünée;
there-was of-children great gathering
là erent venu por joer,
there they-were come for to-play
cil les prisent à esgarder:
those them began to watch
entre les altres qui joërent
among the others who played
od deus vallès qui se meslèrent,
with two youths who themselves quarreled
ce fu Mellins et Dinabus,
this was Merlin and Dinabus
mult fu l'uns vers l'altre irascus.
very was the-one toward the-other angry
Li uns l'altre contralioit
The one the-other contradicted
et son linage reprandoit:
and his lineage reproached
tais toi, dist Dynabus, Merlin,
be-silent thee said Dinabus Merlin

jo sui assés de millor lin
I am plenty of better line
que tu n'en es, si te repose,
than thou not-thereof art so thee rest
je sai assés malvaise cose
I know plenty evil thing
ne doi pas à moi estriver,
not thou-oughtest at-all with me strive
ne mon linage réprover:
nor my lineage reproach
jo sui nés de rois et de contes,
I am born of kings and of counts
mais se tu tes parens acontes
but if thou thy kinsmen recount
jà ton père ne nomeras,
ever thy father not thou-wilt-name
ne tu nel' sés, ne ne saras;
nor thou not-it knowest nor not wilt-know
ainc ton père ne connéus,
ever thy father not thou-knewest
ne tu ainc père n'en éus.
nor thou ever father not-thereof hadst
Cil qui les vallès escotoient,
Those who the boys listened-to
qui tes homes quérant aloient,
who such men seeking went
quant il oïrent la tençon
when they heard the quarrel
as voisins vinrent environ,
to-the neighbors they-came around

por enquerre qui cil estoit
for to-inquire who that-one was
qui onques père éu n'avoit?
who ever father had not-had
Et li voisin ont respondu
And the neighbors have answered
que onques père n'ot éu,
that ever father not-he-had had
ne la mère qui l'ot porté
nor the mother who him-had borne
ne sot qui l'avoit engenré.
not knew who him-had begotten
De son père rien ne savoit,
Of his father anything not he-knew
mais mère avoit qu'il connissoit:
but mother he-had whom-he knew
fille al roi ert de Demercie,
daughter of-the king she-was of Demetia
ce estoit de Gales partie.
this was of Wales part
None estoit, de mult bone vie,
Nun she-was of very good life
en la vile, à une abéie.
in the town at an abbey
Dont sunt cil al provost alé:
Then are those to-the provost gone
de par le roi li ont rové
on behalf-of the king to-him they-have asked
que Merlins, qui onques n'ot père,
that Merlin who ever not-had father

soit menés al roi et sa mère.
be led to-the king and his mother
Li provos nel' valt refuser
The provost not-it wished to-refuse
ans deux les fist al roi mener.
both two them he-made to-the king lead
Li rois les reçut bonement,
The king them received kindly
si parla amiablement:
so spoke amiably
dame, dist-il, connois me voir,
lady said-he acknowledge to-me truth
ne puis, se par toi, non savoir
not I-can except through thee not know
qui enganra ton fil Merlin?
who begot thy son Merlin
La none tint le chief enclin,
The nun held the head bowed
quant ele a pensé un petit:
when she has thought a little
se Dex, fait-ele, me aït,
so God says-she me may-help
onques ne connui, ne ne vi
ever not I-knew nor not saw
qui cest vallet enjenui,
who this boy begot

onques n'oï, onques ne soi
ever not-I-heard ever not I-knew
se se fu hom de qui jo l'oi
if it was man of whom I him-had
mais ce soi-jo por voir et sai
but this knew-I for true and know
et por voir le rejéhirai:
and for true it I-shall-confess
quant ge fui alques grans norie, 7590
when I was somewhat grown nurtured
ne sai se fu fantosmerie,
not I-know if it-was phantom
une cose venoit sovent
a thing came often
qui me baisoit estroitement;
which me kissed closely
et nuit et jour soloit venir
and night and day it-was-wont to-come
à moi, mais ainc nel' poi véir 7595
to me but ever not-it I-could see
comme home parler l'ooie
like man speak it-I-heard
et comme home le santoie;
and like man it I-felt
et pluisor fois à moi parloit
and several times to me it-spoke
que noiant ne se démostroit.
which at-all not itself showed
Tant m'ala sovent aproçant, 7600
So-much me-it-went often approaching

et tant m'ala sovent baisant,
and so-much me-it-went often kissing
od moi se colca, si conçui,
with me itself it-lay so I-conceived
onques home plus n'i connui.
ever man more not-there I-knew
Cest vallet oi, cest vallet ai,
This boy I-had this boy I-have
plus n'en soi, et plus n'en dirai.
more not-thereof I-knew and more not-thereof I-shall-say
Dont fait li rois venir Malgant,
Then makes the king come Malgant
un clerc qu'il tint à mult savant,
a clerk whom-he held for very learned
si li dist, se estre pooit
so to-him he-said if be it-could
que cele feme li contoit?
what that woman to-him told
Trové avon, fait cil, escrit
Found we-have says that-one written
qu'une manière d'esperit
that-a kind of-spirit
est entre la lune et la terre.
is between the moon and the earth
Qui velt de lor nature enquerre?
Who wishes of their nature to-inquire
En partie ont nature humaine
In part they-have nature human
et em partie soveraine.
and in part sovereign

Incubi demoines ont non;
Incubi demons they-have name
par cel air ont lor région
through that air they-have their region
et en la tère ont lor repaire.
and in the earth they-have their dwelling
Ne pueent mie grant mal faire,
Not they-can at-all great ill do
ne pueent mie mult nuisir
not they-can at-all much harm
fors de gaber et d'eschernir;
except of mocking and of-jeering
bien prendent humaine figure,
well they-take human figure
et ce consent bien lor nature.
and this consents well their nature
Mainte meschine ont porjéue
Many-a maiden they-have lain-with
et en tel guise decéue;
and in such guise deceived
ensi puet estre Merlins nés
thus can be Merlin born
ensi puet estre engenrés.
thus he-can be begotten
Rois, ce dist Merlins, mandé m'as,
King this said Merlin summoned me-thou-hast
que me vels, por que me mandas?
what me wishest-thou for what me summonedst-thou
Merlin, dist li rois, sel' saras,
Merlin said the king so-it thou-wilt-know

entent-il bien et si l'oras:
hear-it well and so it-thou-wilt-hear
une tor ai fait commenchier
a tower I-have made begin
et fait metre pière et mortier,
and made put stone and mortar
mais quanque l'en le jor i fait
but whatever one the day there makes
esfondre en tere et dedens vait;
sinks into earth and within goes
ne sai se as oï parler,
not I-know if thou-hast heard speak
ne puis le jor tant faire olvrer,
not I-can the day so-much make work
que la nuit, ne soit esfondré,
that the night not may-be sunk
mult i a jà del mien gasté.
much there has already of-the mine wasted
Ce dient mi devinéor
This say my soothsayers
que jà n'achieverai ma tor
that ever not-I-shall-achieve my tower
se tes sans n'en est dedens mis,
if thy blood not-thereof is within put
por ce que sans père nasquis.
for this that without father thou-wast-born
Jà Deu, ce dist Merlins, ne place
Ever God this said Merlin not it-may-please
que par mon sanc ta tor estace.
that by my blood thy tower may-stand

Por mentéors ferai tenir,
For liars them-I-shall-make be-held
se tu fais devant moi venir
if thou makest before me come
tos cels qui de mon sanc sortirent,
all those who of my blood cast-lots
mentéor furent, si mentirent.
liars they-were so they-lied
Li rois les a fait demander
The king them has made ask-for
à Merlin les fist amener.
to Merlin them he-made bring
Quant Merlins les ot esgardés:
When Merlin them had looked-at
signor, fait-il, qui devinés,
lords says-he who divine
dites que doit et dont avient
say what it-means and whence it-comes
que ceste olvraigne ne se tient?
that this work not itself holds
Se vous ne me savés respondre
If you not me know-how to-answer
por quoi la tor à tère esfondre,
for what the tower to earth sinks
comment savés vous deviner
how know you to-divine
que par mon sanc doie finer?
that by my blood it-must end

Dites qui a el fondement
Say what there-is in-the foundation
por quoi la tor ciet tant sovent,
for what the tower falls so often
et puis dites que il estuet
and then say what it behooves
et par quel cose tenir puet?
and by what thing hold it-can
Se vous ne nous faites savoir
If you not us make know
qui desos fait l'oevre caoir,
what beneath makes the-work fall
comment sera cose créable
how will-it-be thing believable
que par mon sanc doie estre estable?
that by my blood it-must be stable
Dites al roi le destorbier,
Say to-the king the hindrance
et puis dites qui a mestier.
and then say what there-is need
Tot li devinéor se torent
All the soothsayers themselves were-silent
et à Merlin dire ne sorent;
and to Merlin to-say not knew-how
et com Merlin ce entendi,
and as Merlin this heard
al roi maintenant respondi:
to-the king at-once he-answered
sire, ce dit Merlins, entent:
lord this said Merlin hear

desos ta tor, el fondement,
beneath thy tower in-the foundation
a un estang grant et parfont
there-is a pool great and deep
par quoi ta tor en terre font;
through which thy tower into earth sinks
et sans altre rien m'en créés,
and without other thing me-thereof believe
faites i foïr si verrés
make there dig so you-will-see
porquoi la tor est afondrée,
for-what the tower is sunk
la vérité verras provée.
the truth thou-wilt-see proved
Li rois fait foïr, si trova
The king makes dig so found
l'estang que Merlin ensagna:
the-pool which Merlin showed
signor, ce dist Merlins, oiés,
lords this said Merlin hear
vous qui querre me faisiés
you who seek me made
por meller el mortier mon sanc,
for to-mix in-the mortar my blood
dites qu'il a en cest estanc?
say what there-is in this pool
Cil furent tot taisant et mu,
Those were all silent and mute
ne bien ne mal n'ont respondu,
neither good nor ill not-they-have answered

Merlins au roi s'en retorna,
Merlin to-the king himself-thence returned
oiant ses homes, l'apela:
hearing his men him-called
fai, dist-il, cest estant voidier
make said-he this pool empty
et par ruissiax l'ève espuisier.
and by streams the-water draw-off
Al fons a deux dragons gisans
At-the bottom there-are two dragons lying
en deux chaves pières dormans;
in two hollow stones sleeping
li uns des dragons, si est blans
the one of-the dragons so is white
et li altres vermax com sans,
and the other red as blood
li rois se prent à mervillier,
the king himself takes to marvel
toute l'ève fait espuissier.
all the-water he-makes draw-off
Quant l'ève fu fors espandue
When the-water was out poured
et parmi les cans escorue
and through the fields run-off
doi dragon sunt en piés sali
two dragons are on feet leaped
et durement sunt envaï.
and hard are attacked

Par grant fierté s'entre asaillirent
By great fierceness each-other they-assailed
et ruistement s'entr' envaïrent;
and violently each-other they-attacked
bien les véissiés escumer
well them you-might-see foam
et des bouces flame jeter.
and from-the mouths flame throw
Li rois joste l'estanc s'asist,
The king beside the-pool himself-sat
Merlin proia qu'il li déist
Merlin he-prayed that-he to-him might-say
que li dragon senefioient
what the dragons signified
qui par tel ire s'asambloient.
who with such wrath themselves-joined
Dont dist Merlins les profésies,
Then said Merlin the prophecies
que vous avés sovent oïes,
which you have often heard
des rois qui à venir estoient,
of-the kings who to come were
qui la tère tenir devoient.
who the land hold ought
Ne voil son livre tranlater,
Not I-wish his book to-translate
quant jo nel' sai entepréter:
since I not-it know to-interpret

nule rien dire ne volroie
any thing to-say not I-would-wish
qu'issi ne fu com jo diroie.
that-thus not was as I would-say
Li rois a mult loë Merlin
The king has much praised Merlin
et mult le tint à bon devin.
and much him held for good soothsayer
Demanda lui quant il morroit
He-asked him when he would-die
et par quel fin il fineroit,
and by what end he would-end
car de sa fin ert en esfroi:
for of his end he-was in fright
garde-toi, dist-il, garde-toi
guard-thyself said-he guard-thyself
del fu as anfans Costantin;
from-the fire of-the children (of-)Constantine
car par lor fu vanras à fin.
for by their fire thou-wilt-come to end
D'Amorique sont jà méu
from-Armorica they-are already set-out
et vienent par mer, à vertu;
and they-come by sea in force
de ce te puis faire certain,
of this thee I-can make certain
quatorse nés venront demain.
fourteen ships will-come tomorrow
Mal lor as fait, mal te feront,
Ill to-them thou-hast done ill to-thee they-will-do

de tel crieme se vengeront.
of such crime themselves they-will-avenge
A ton mal lor frère traïs
To thy harm their brother thou-betrayedst
et à ton mal roi te féis,
and to thy harm king thyself madest
et à ton mal, en cest païs,
and to thy harm into this country
Paiens et Saisnes a traisis.
Pagans and Saxons thou-hast drawn
Deus encombres as de deus pars,
Two hindrances thou-hast from two sides
ne sai de quel primes te gars:
not I-know from which first thyself thou-shouldst-guard
d'une part Saisne te guerroient
from-one side Saxons thee war-on
qui volenters te destruiroient;
who willingly thee would-destroy
de l'altre part vienent li oir
from the-other side come the heirs
qui cest raine volront avoir;
who this realm will-wish to-have
Bretaigne volent desrainier
Britain they-wish to-claim
et lor frère volent vengier.
and their brother they-wish to-avenge
Se dès or puès fuir, si fui
If from now thou-canst flee so flee
car li frère vienent andui;
for the brothers come both

Aurèles primes rois sera,
Aurelius first king will-be
mais par puison primes morra.
but by poison first he-will-die
Uter ses frère Pandragon
Uther his brother Pendragon
tandra em pès la région,
will-hold in peace the region
mais trop tost sera engrotés
but too soon he-will-be sickened
et par tes oirs envenimés;
and by thy heirs poisoned
ses fils qui ert de Cornuaille,
his son who will-be of Cornwall
comme sangler fiers en bataille,
like boar fierce in battle
les traïtors devoërra
the traitors will-devour
et tous tes parens destruira,
and all thy kinsmen will-destroy
cil sera mult vaillans et pros
that-one will-be very valiant and worthy
ses anemis destruira tos.
his enemies he-will-destroy all
Merlins sa parole fina
Merlin his word ended
et Vortiger d'iloc torna.
and Vortigern from-there turned
Lendemain, plus n'i demora,
Next-day more not-there he-delayed

li flote as frères ariva
the fleet of-the brothers arrived
en Destremue en lor navie,
at Dartmouth in their fleet
à mervillose baronie.
with marvelous baronage
Es vous Bretons joians et liés,
Behold you Britons joyful and glad
les uns des altres enforciés;
the ones by-the others strengthened
ensamble se sunt aloié,
together themselves are allied
qui ains erent esparpillié;
who before were scattered
Hangist les avoit fait tapir
Hengist them had made hide
et par mons et par vax fuir
and through mountains and through valleys flee
qui od destruit la baronie,
who had destroyed the baronage
des castiax ot la signorie.
of-the castles he-had the lordship
Breton se sont ensamble atrait
Britons themselves are together drawn
et d'Aurèles ont signor fait.
and of-Aurelius have lord made
Vortiger qui cest plait oï
Vortigern who this business heard
en Gales ert, si se garni;
in Wales was so himself garrisoned

à un chastel Gencire ot non,
to a castle Gencire it-had name
ala querre garantison
he-went to-seek protection
et de la gent la plus vaillant,
and of the folk the most valiant
joste Gaie, une ève corant;
beside Wye a water running
Gaie l'appèlent li voisin
Gaie it-call the neighbors
et la contrée a non Hergrin.
and the country has name Hergrin
Ce fu desor Droac un mont,
This was upon Droac a mount
ce dient cil qui de là sont.
this say those who from there are
Vortiger se garnist forment
Vortigern himself garrisoned strongly
d'armes, de vitaille, de gent,
with-arms with victuals with folk
se il par ce péust garir
if he by this might be-safe
assés s'en a fait bien garnir.
plenty himself-thereof he-has made well garrison
Lor barons ont li frère pris,
Their barons have the brothers taken
tant ont le roi Vortiger quis
so-much they-have the king Vortigern sought
qu'en un castel l'ont asségié;
that-in a castle him-they-have besieged

assés i ot trait et lancié.
plenty there was shot and hurled
Volentiers prandre le voloient;
Willingly to-take him they-wished
car à merveille le haoient.
for at marvel him they-hated
Se li frère l'orent haï
If the brothers him-had hated
Vortiger l'ot bien déservi.
Vortigern it-had well deserved
Ocis ot lor frère Costant
Killed he-had their brother Constant
et Costantin lor père avant,
and Constantine their father before
sans main metre, par traïson,
without hand to-put through treason
si que por voir la savoit-on.
so that for true it knew-one
Eldof, li quens de Gloecestre,
Elduf the count of Gloucester
qui de Gales savoit bien l'estre,
who of Wales knew well the-lay
ert hom Aurèle devenus
was man (of-)Aurelius become
et od lui ert en ost venus:
and with him was into host come

Eldof, dist Aurèle, por Dé
Elduf said Aurelius for God
as tu dont mon père oblié
hast thou then my father forgotten
qui te nori et te fieua
who thee nurtured and thee enfeoffed
et mon frère qui mult t'ama;
and my brother who much thee-loved
andui volentiers t'onoroient
both willingly thee-honored
mult te crémoient et amoient.
much thee they-feared and loved
Par l'engin à cest solduiant,
By the-device of this hireling
à cest parjure, cest tyrant,
of this perjurer this tyrant
furent ocis, encor vesquissent
they-were killed still they-would-live
se par son engien ne périssent;
if by his device not they-had-perished
se de ces éus marremant
if of these thou-hadst grief
pran de Vortiger vangemant.
take on Vortigern vengeance
Par seul cest amonestemant
By only this admonition
se sont armé communemant;
themselves they-are armed in-common
atret ont fait, bois aporté,
heap they-have made wood brought

tot ont anpli le grant fossé,
all they-have filled the great ditch
puis ont en l'atrait ce fu mis
then they-have into the-heap the fire put
et li fus est el castel pris;
and the fire is in-the castle caught
de castel se mist en la tor
from castle itself it-put into the tower
et ès maisons qui sont entor.
and into-the houses which are around
Dont véissiés castel ardoir,
Then you-might-see castle burn
flambe voler, maisons caoir
flame fly houses fall
ars fu li rois et cil od lui
burned was the king and those with him
qui od lui orent pris refui.
who with him had taken refuge
N'i remest dame ne pucèle
Not-there remained lady nor maiden
et sa feme art qui mult fut bèle.
and his wife burns who very was fair

Aurelius Against Hengist

II

Hengist flees beyond the Humber and Aurelius follows through a wasted land. Hengist's Saxons charge on a field the king has chosen; the Britons hold, and Hengist flees to Conisbrough, turns to fight again, and is taken by Elduf of Gloucester, who drags him off by the nasal. On the counsel of Bishop Eldadus, who tells how Samuel hewed King Agag in pieces, Elduf beheads him. Octa, Hengist's son, yields at York with a chain in his hand and is given land beside Scotland. Aurelius restores the churches of York, London, and Winchester, and at Amesbury, where the Britons were murdered with knives, he wishes to raise a lasting work. Archbishop Tremorius sends him to Merlin, who will not prophesy for show but bids him fetch the Giants' Dance from Ireland, stones that heal, and Uther goes for them with fifteen thousand men and defeats the Irish king Gilloninius.

Quant li noviax rois ot conquis
When the new king had conquered
et torné à soi le païs,
and turned to himself the country
sor les paiens, ce dist, iront
upon the pagans this he-said they-will-go
et la terre déliverront;
and the land will-deliver
Hengist le sot, bien le dota,
Hengist it knew well it he-feared
et vers Escoce trespassa,
and toward Scotland passed
et tote la tère guerpi
and all the land forsook
oltre le Hombre s'anfui.
beyond the Humber himself-thence-fled

Car socors et aïe et force
For succor and aid and force
devoit avoir de cels d'Escoce,
he-was-to have from those of-Scotland
et se grant besoing li sordoit
and if great need to-him arose
en Escoce trespasseroit.
into Scotland he-would-pass
Li rois de jornée en jornée
The king from day's-march to day's-march
à cèle part sa gent menée,
to that side his folk led
et li Breton tostans croissoient
and the Britons always grew
et tant espès à lui venoient
and so thick to him came
n'el péust pas nus hom nombrer
not-it could at-all any man number
plus que l'araine de la mer.
more than the-sand of the sea
Mult trova li rois païs gast,
Much found the king country waste
vist qu'il n'i ot qui laborast.
he-saw that-it not-there had who might-labor
Castiax vit destruis et cités,
Castles he-saw destroyed and cities
viles arses, mostiers robés;
towns burned minsters robbed
Paien orent tot escillié,
Pagans had all laid-waste

rien n'i avoient gaagnié.
anything not-there they-had tilled
A tos pramist estorement,
To all he-promised restoring
se il repairoit salvement.
if he returned safely
Hengist sot que li rois venoit
Hengist knew that the king came
et sans meller n'en torneroit.
and without fighting not-thence would-turn
Ses compaignons volt conforter
His companions he-wished to-comfort
et hardiment lor volt doner:
and boldness to-them he-wished to-give
baron, fait-il, ne dotés mie
barons says-he not fear at-all
cele malvaise compagnie.
that evil company
Assés savons que Breton sont,
Plenty we-know what Britons are
jà contre nous ne se tanront,
ever against us not themselves will-hold
s' un poi les poés contrester
if a little them you-can withstand
jà un n'en verrés arester;
ever one not-of-them you-will-see stay
od poi de gens par mainte fois
with few of folk by many-a time
les avés vainqus et destrois.
them you-have vanquished and constrained

Se il ont grant gent, vous que calt? 7870
If they have great folk to-you what matters
Lor multitude rien ne valt,
Their multitude anything not avails
rien ne valt li gent que on maine
anything not avails the folk whom one leads
qui a foible et fol chavetaine.
which has weak and foolish captain
De malvaise gent, sans signor,
Of evil folk without lord
ne doit l'on mie avoir paor. 7875
not ought one at-all have fear
Enfès est qui's a à garder,
A-child it-is who-them has to guard
ne puet encor armes porter,
not he-can yet arms bear
nous somes bon combatéor.
we are good fighters
Et esprové en maint estor
And proven in many-a fight
por nos vies nous desfendons, 7880
for our lives we defend
n'i aura altre raançon.
not-there will-have other ransom
Or soions hardi et séur,
Now let-us-be bold and secure
faisons de nous castiax et mur,
let-us-make of us castles and wall

or soions tout hardi et fort
now let-us-be all bold and strong
ou autrement sommes tot mort.
or otherwise we-are all dead
Hengist laia l'amonester,
Hengist left-off the-exhorting
ses chevalier fist tos armer;
his knights he-made all arm
contre Bretons hastéément
against Britons hastily
a cevalcié iriément,
he-has ridden wrathfully
désarmés les quida trover
disarmed them he-thought to-find
s'is quida tos desbareter;
so-them he-thought all to-rout
mais Breton qui paien dotoient
but Britons who pagans feared
et jor et nuit armé estoient,
both day and night armed were
quant li rois sot que il voloient
when the king knew what they wished
et que combatre s'en venoient,
and that to-fight themselves-thence they-came

en un camp ki bon li sambla
in a field which good to-him seemed
conduit sa gent et ordona
led his folk and arrayed
trois mil chevalier armés
three thousand knights armed
qu'il ot d'Amorique amenés,
whom-he had from-Armorica brought
trestos tenus à bons vassax
all held for good vassals
fist d'une part estre as cevax.
he-made on-one side be on-the horses
De Galois a fait deux compaignes,
Of Welsh he-has made two companies
les unes fist estre ès montaignes
the ones he-made be in-the mountains
que Paien monter n'i péussent
that Pagans climb not-there might
por nul besong que il éussent,
for any need that they might-have
les altres fist el bois ester
the others he-made in-the wood stand
et l'entrée del bois garder
and the-entrance of-the wood guard
que se Paien si embatissent
that if Pagans themselves-there plunged
que li Galois les océissent.
that the Welsh them might-kill

Les altres fist el camp descendre
The others he-made in-the field dismount
por bien ester et por desfendre.
for well to-stand and for to-defend
Quant il ot tot aparillié,
When he had all prepared
si com l'on li ot ensaignié,
so as one to-him had taught
od ses homes fu naturax
with his men he-was native
que il conut plus à loiax.
whom he knew more for loyal
Joste lui fist tenir s'ensaigne
Beside him he-made hold his-ensign
ù sa gent s'alit et estraigne;
where his folk itself-might-rally and close-ranks
li quens Elduf fu à son lés
the count Elduf was at his side
et des altres barons assés:
and of-the other barons plenty
Dex, dist Elduf, tant lies seroie
God said Elduf so glad I-would-be
se jo le jor véir pooie
if I the day see could
qu'à Hengist péusse venir;
that-to Hengist I-might come
bien me devroit dont sovenir
well to-me ought then remember
que il ocist, lès Abresbère,
that he killed near Amesbury

tote la flor de nostre empère,
all the flower of our empire
tot le primerain jor de mai,
all the first day of May
quant jo à paine en escapai.
when I with pain thence escaped
As paroles qu'Elduf disoit,
At-the words that-Elduf said
qui de Hangist se complagnoit,
who of Hengist himself complained
es vous al camp venu Hengist
behold you to-the field come Hengist
qui grant masse del camp porprist;
who great mass of-the field occupied
n'i firent pas grant demorier
not-there they-made at-all great delay
à la bataille commenchier.
at the battle beginning
Dès que il sont entrevenu
As-soon as they are come-together
semprè se sont entrecoru;
straightway themselves they-are run-at-each-other
dont véissiés vasax combatre,
then you-might-see vassals fight
les uns, les autres entre abatre,
the ones the others each-other strike-down
cels asalir et cels desfendre,
these assail and those defend
grans cols recoivre, grans cols prandre,
great blows receive great blows take

les uns les autres enverser
the ones the others overturn
et sor les mors les vis passer;
and over the dead the living pass
escus perchier, hanstes croissir,
shields pierce shafts shatter
navrés chaoir, homes morir.
wounded fall men die
Paien lor fax Dex apeloient
Pagans their false Gods called-on
et Crestien Deu réclamoient;
and Christians God invoked
bien se combatoient Paien
well themselves fought Pagans
et assés mius li Crestien.
and plenty better the Christians
Lor conrois firent départir
Their troops they-made part
si lor firent le camp guerpir;
so them they-made the field forsake
cols recevoient grans et gros,
blows they-received great and big
si lor firent torner lor dos.
so them they-made turn their backs
Quant Hangist vit les siens torner,
When Hengist saw the his-own turn
les dos as cols abandoner,
the backs to-the blows abandon
à Cimigesbur vint pognant,
to Conisbrough he-came spurring

iloc quida avoir garant.
there he-thought to-have refuge
Mais li rois l'ala porsuiant
But the king him-went pursuing
criant as siens: avant, avant.
crying to-the his-own forward forward
Quant Hangist vit qu'il le suioient
When Hengist saw that-they him followed
et al castel l'asegeroient,
and at-the castle him-would-besiege
miax se valt combatre defors
better himself he-wished to-fight outside
et metre en à bandon son cors
and put in at hazard his body
que laissier dedens asséoir
than let within besiege
quant de secors n'avoit espoir.
when of succor not-he-had hope
Sa gent restraint et recoilli
His folk he-drew-in and gathered
et à combatre l'establi.
and for fighting it-set-in-array
Es vous bataille de recief,
Behold you battle once again
aspre mellée et estor grief.
harsh melee and fight grievous
Paien se furent averti.
Pagans themselves were alerted

Si ont li un l'altre enhardi
So have the one the-other emboldened
li Crestien mult i perdissent
the Christians much there would-have-lost
et li Paien mult i préissent,
and the Pagans much there would-have-taken
car trop venoient à desroi,
for too-much they-came in disarray
mais li trois mil en un conroi,
but the three thousand in one array
qui à ceval furent, i vinrent
who on horse were there came
qui's socorurent et maintinrent.
who-them succored and maintained
Paien forment se combatoient,
Pagans strongly themselves fought
quel mervelle, car bien savoient
what marvel for well they-knew
que jà vif n'en escaperoient
that ever alive not-thence they-would-escape
se por bien faire n'en aloient.
if by well doing not-thence they-went
Helduf vit Hengist, s' el connut,
Elduf saw Hengist so him knew
haï l'ot et haïr le dut.
hated him-he-had and hate him he-ought
Tens vit et le definement
Time he-saw and the ending
d'acomplir son désirement.
of-accomplishing his desire

L'espée traite li corut
The-sword drawn at-him he-ran
Hengist fu fors, le colp reçut:
Hengist was strong the blow he-received
es vos les deus vassax jostés,
behold you the two vassals joined
les brans tos nus, escus levés.
the blades all naked shields raised
Mult lor veissiés cols dobler
Much from-them you-might-see blows double
et des achiers le fu voler.
and from-the steels the fire fly
Gornois li quens de Cornuaille,
Gorlois the count of Cornwall
vint comme pros à la bataille.
came as worthy to the battle
Helduf l'a véu aproismier
Elduf him-has seen approach
plus séur s'an fist et plus fier;
more secure himself-thereby he-made and more fierce
à guise de hardi vassal
in guise of bold vassal
corut Hangist prandre al nasal,
he-ran Hengist to-take by-the nasal
à soi le trait, si l'embronca,
to himself him he-draws so him-bowed-down
par vive force l'emmena:
by living force him-led-away

chevalier, dist-il, Deu merchi
knights said-he God thanks
mon désirier ai acompli;
my desire I-have accomplished
pris avons cestui et venqu
taken we-have this-one and vanquished
qui mult mal ara esméu.
who very ill will-have stirred-up
A ses hommes l'en a mené
To his men him-thence he-has led
à ocire lor a rouvé:
to kill to-them he-has bidden
ociés cest chien esragié
kill this dog maddened
qui onques de nous n'ot pitié;
who ever on us not-had pity
cis estoit li ciès de la guerre
this-one was the head of the war
qui escillié a nostre terre.
who laid-waste has our land
La victore en vos mains tenés
The victory in your hands you-hold
se vous cestui ocis avés.
if you this-one killed have
Dont fu Hangist bien justiciés
Then was Hengist well dealt-with
en chaaine mis et loiés,
in chain put and bound

al roi Aurèle fu livrés
to-the king Aurelius he-was delivered
bien fu destrois et bien gardés.
well he-was constrained and well guarded
Ses fils, qui el camp ert, Octa
His son who in-the field was Octa
et li siens cosins Ebissa.
and the his-own cousin Ebissa
A paine s'an sunt escapé
With pain themselves-thence are escaped
et en Euroïc sont entré;
and into York are entered
la cité ont dedens garnie
the city they-have within garrisoned
à tant com il orent d'aïe.
with as-much as they had of-aid
Pluisor altre fui en sunt,
Several others fled thence are
qui bois, qui plain, qui val, qui mont.
who wood who plain who valley who mount
Or sunt paien mort et vaincu
Now are pagans dead and vanquished
pris et loié et retenu.
taken and bound and held
Li rois fu lies de cèle glore
The king was glad of that glory
que Dex li ot doné victore
that God to-him had given victory
dedens Comilgesbur entra,
within Conisbrough he-entered

trois jors entiers i sojorna
three days entire there he-sojourned
por les navrés médiciner
for the wounded to-heal
et por les lassés reposer.
and for the weary to-rest
Entretant as Barons parla,
Meanwhile to-the Barons he-spoke
communément lor demanda
in-common of-them he-asked
que del felon Hengist feroit
what with-the felon Hengist he-would-do
s'il le tendroit u ociroit.
if-he him would-keep or would-kill
Eldaduf est em piés levés
Eldadus is to feet risen
frère le conte Helduf puis né,
brother (of-)the count Elduf after born
evesques ert religios
bishop he-was religious
et de letres essientos:
and in letters learned
jo voil, fait-il, de Hengist faire,
I wish says-he with Hengist to-do
cest traïor, cest aversaire,
this traitor this adversary
ce que Samuel fist jadis
that which Samuel did formerly
del roi Agad, quant il fu pris.
with-the king Agag when he was taken

Agad estoit mult orgillos,
Agag was very proud
roi de Masec mult glorios,
king of Amalek very glorious
les Jius tostans guerrioit,
the Jews always he-warred
mal lor faisoit, mal lor querroit;
ill to-them he-did ill to-them he-sought
lor tères prenoit et ardoit
their lands he-took and burned
et mult sovent les ocioit;
and very often them he-killed
puis fu à sa mésaventure
then he-was to his misadventure
pris à une desconfiture.
taken in a discomfiture
Devant Saül fu présentés
Before Saul he-was presented
qui dont estoit rois coronés;
who then was king crowned
quant Saül enquist qu'il feroit
when Saul inquired what-he would-do
d'Agad qui livrés li estoit,
with-Agag who delivered to-him was
em piés se leva Samoël,
to feet himself raised Samuel
un saint profète d'Israël;
a holy prophet of-Israel

onques de plus grant saintée
ever of more great sanctity
ne vit l'en home à son aë.
not saw one man in his age
Cil Samuel Agag saisi,
That Samuel Agag seized
par pluisors pièces le parti,
through many pieces him divided
tot l'a par membres décolpé
all him-he-has by limbs cut-up
et par la contrée jeté.
and through the country thrown
Savés que Samoël disoit
Know-you what Samuel said
quant il d'Agad pièces faisoit.
when he of-Agag pieces made
Agag, maint home as travillié,
Agag many-a man thou-hast tormented
maint home ocis et essillié;
many-a man killed and laid-waste
tu as mainte ame de cors traite
thou hast many-a soul from body drawn
et mainte mère triste faite;
and many-a mother sad made
maint anfant as fait orfenin
many-a child thou-hast made orphan
et tu es or venus à fin;
and thou art now come to end

ta mère sans enfant ferai
thy mother without child I-shall-make
et t'ame de ton cors trairai.
and thy-soul from thy body I-shall-draw
Ce devés faire de cestui
This you-ought do with this-one
que Samoël fist de celui.
that Samuel did with that-one
Par l'essample qu'Eldadu dist
By the-example which-Eldadus said
sailli Helduf, si prist Hengist,
leaped Elduf so took Hengist
fors de la vile le mena,
out of the town him he-led
s'espée traist s'el décola.
his-sword he-drew so-him beheaded
Li rois fist le cors conraer,
The king made the body array
ensevelir et enterrer,
shroud and bury
à la guise que cil faisoient
in the guise that those did
qui la loi paianor tenoient.
who the law pagan held
Li rois se contint vivement,
The king himself conducted briskly
ne sojorna pas longement:
not he-sojourned at-all long
à Euroïc vint à grant ost,
to York he-came with great host

ses anemis dedens enclost.
his enemies within he-enclosed
Octa fils Hengist fu dedens
Octa son (of-)Hengist was within
et partie de ses parens.
and part of his kinsmen
Cil vit que nul socors n'aroit;
That-one saw that any succor not-he-would-have
porpansa soi qu'il se randroit,
he-bethought himself that-he himself would-surrender
en aventure se metroit
in adventure himself he-would-put
et humlement merci querroit,
and humbly mercy would-seek
s'il la trovoit bel li seroit,
if-he it found fair to-him it-would-be
s'altrement si se desfendroit.
if-otherwise so himself he-would-defend
Ensi fist com il l'a pensé
Thus he-did as he it-has thought
et si parant li ont loë:
and his kinsmen to-him they-have advised
de la cité à pais issi
from the city in peace he-came-out
e tot si baron altresi.
and all his barons likewise
Octa qui premiers al roi vint
Octa who first to-the king came
une chaaine de fer tint:
a chain of iron held

sire, fait-il, merci, merci;
lord says-he mercy mercy

tot nostre Deu nous sont fali
all our Gods to-us are failed

ù nous solon avoir fiance,
in-whom we are-wont to-have faith

tes Dex est de forçor puiçance
thy God is of stronger power

miracles a fait et vertus
miracles he-has done and powers

por toi, quant tu nos as venqus.
for thee when thou us hast vanquished

Venqus sui, à ta merci vien,
Vanquished I-am to thy mercy I-come

tien la caaine que jo tien,
hold the chain which I hold

si feras de moi ton talant
so thou-wilt-do with me thy will

e de mes homes ensemant.
and with my men likewise

Tot avon mis à ton plaisir
All we-have put to thy pleasure

de vie et de membre tolir,
of life and of limb to-take

et se tu vis nos retenoies
and if thou alive us wouldst-keep

de nous mult bon service aroies.
from us very good service thou-wouldst-have

Lioalment te servirion
Loyally thee we-would-serve
et ti home devenrion.
and thy men would-become
Li rois fu de grant piété,
The king was of great pity
environ soi a esgardé
around himself he-has looked
savoir que li baron diroient,
to-know what the barons would-say
et comment li conselleroient:
and how him they-would-counsel
Eldadu li bons ordenés
Eldadus the good ordained-one
parla avant comme sénés:
spoke first as wise
bien est, fait-il, et fu et iert
well it-is says-he and was and will-be
qu'il ait merci qui merci quiert,
that he-may-have mercy who mercy seeks
car qui merci n'en a d'altrui
for who mercy not-thereof has of-another
et Dex merci n'en a de lui.
also God mercy not-thereof has of him
Cist de merci avoir t'asaient,
These of mercy having thee-essay
merchi quièrent et merchi aient.
mercy they-seek and mercy let-them-have

Bertaigne qui est longe et lée
Britain which is long and wide
par pluisors lius est desertée;
through many places is deserted
fai lor an partie livrer,
make to-them thereof part deliver
si's fai arer et laborer,
so-them make plow and labor
si vivront de lor gaagnages.
so they-will-live from their tillage
Mais primes aiés d'els ostages
But first have from-them hostages
que loialment te serviront,
that loyally thee they-will-serve
et loialment se contanront.
and loyally themselves will-conduct
Cil de Gabion merci quisrent
Those of Gibeon mercy sought
quant Giu jadis les conquisrent;
when the-Jews formerly them conquered
merci quisrent, merci trovèrent
mercy they-sought mercy they-found
et vie quite lor clamèrent.
and life quit to-them they-declared
Ne devon mie estre pior
Not we-ought at-all be worse
que Jiu furent à cel jor;
than the-Jews were in that day
merchi crient, merchi recoivent,
mercy they-cry mercy they-receive

d'or en avant morir ne doivent.
from-now on forward die not they-ought
Li rois tère lor otria,
The king land to-them granted
si com Eldadus lor loa,
so as Eldadus to-them advised
de joste Escoce à gaagnier.
from beside Scotland to till
Dont s'alèrent là herbergier,
Then themselves-went there to-lodge
mais primes donèrent ostages,
but first they-gave hostages
enfans de lor millors lignages.
children of their best lineages
Quinze jors fu puis en la vile
Fifteen days he-was then in the town
sa gent manda et tint concile:
his folk he-summoned and held council
ses barons, ses clers, ses abés
his barons his clerks his abbots
et ses evêques a mandés.
and his bishops he-has summoned
Lor fiex et lor drois lor randi;
Their fiefs and their rights to-them he-rendered
puis commanda et establi
then he-commanded and established
que li mostier refait seroient
that the minsters remade would-be
que li Romain destruit avoient.
which the Romans destroyed had

Entre tant départi ses os,
In-the meanwhile he-dispersed his hosts
si fist viscontes et provos
so he-made viscounts and provosts
qui ses demaines restoraissent
who his demesnes might-restore
et qui ses rentes li gardaissent:
and who his rents to-him might-guard
maçons fist querre et carpenters
masons he-made seek and carpenters
si fist refaire les mousters;
so he-made remake the minsters
et les yglises par les terres,
and the churches through the lands
qui destruites furent par guerres,
which destroyed were by wars
fist li rois totes restorer
made the king all restore
à Deu servir et honorer.
for God to-serve and to-honor
D'iloc est à Londres tornés
From-there he-is to London turned
ù il estoit mult désirés.
where he was very desired
La cité vist mult empirie
The city he-saw much worsened
et de bons chitéains widie,
and of good citizens emptied
maisons gastes, mostiers chaois,
houses wasted minsters fallen

assés l'a plainte mainte fois.
plenty it-be-has lamented many-a time
Les mostiers fist raparillier
The minsters he-made repair
et clers et borjois repairier
and clerks and burghers return
as lois qui en soloient estre.
to-the laws which there were-wont to-be
Après vint li rois à Guincestre;
After came the king to Winchester
iglises et maisons et tors
churches and houses and towers
refist com il ot fait aillors.
he-remade as he had done elsewhere
Puis est alés à Ambresbere
Then he-is gone to Amesbury
por visiter le cimmetere
for to-visit the cemetery
ù cil erent enseveli
where those were buried
qui as cotiax furent mordri.
who by-the knives were murdered
Maçons et bons engignéors
Masons and good engineers
et carpentiers manda pluisors;
and carpenters he-summoned many

la place de l'ocision
the place of the-slaughter
que fist Hangist par traïson
which made Hengist by treason
volent de tel oevre honorer
they-wish with such work to-honor
qui tostans mais péust durer.
which always more might last
Tremorius, uns sages hom, 8190
Tremorius a wise man
arcevesque de Carlion,
archbishop of Caerleon
li pria que Merlin mandast
him prayed that Merlin he-might-summon
et par son consel en olvrast:
and by his counsel thereof might-work
nus hom mius nel consilleroit
any man better not-him would-counsel
à faire ce que il valroit; 8195
to do that which he would-wish
quar de voir dire et deviner
for in truth saying and divining
ne puet l'on son parel trover.
not can one his peer find
Li rois voloit Merlin véoir
The king wished Merlin to-see
et oïr valt de son savoir.
and to-hear he-wished of his knowledge

A Labenes, une fontaine
At Labenes a spring
qui mult ert en Gales lontaine,
which very was in Wales far
ne sai où est, n'onques n'i fui.
not I-know where it-is nor-ever not-there I-was
Li rois fist envoier por lui;
The king made send for him
cil vint al roi qui l'a mandé
that-one came to-the king who him-has summoned
et li rois l'a mult honoré.
and the king him-has much honored
A grant honor le recoilli,
With great honor him he-received
mult le joï, mult le chiéri,
much him he-welcomed much him he-cherished
mult le proia, mult le requist
much him he-prayed much him he-asked
qu'il li ensaignast et déist
that-he to-him might-teach and might-tell
del tant qui estoit à venir,
of-the time which was to come
mult en voloit par lui oïr:
much thereof he-wished through him to-hear
sire, dist Merlins, non ferai,
lord said Merlin not I-shall-do
jà ma boce n'en olverrai
ever my mouth not-thereof I-shall-open
se n'est par grant nécessité,
if not-it-is through great necessity

et dont par grant humilité.
and then with great humility

Se em parloie par vantance
If thereof I-spoke through boasting

et par eschar et par bobance,
and through mockery and through vainglory

li esperites que jo sai,
the spirit which I know

par qui jo sai ce que jo sai,
through which I know that which I know

de ma bouce se retrairoit
from my mouth itself would-withdraw

et ma science me tolroit,
and my knowledge from-me would-take

ne ma boce ne parleroit
nor my mouth not would-speak

plus que bouce d'altre feroit.
more than mouth of-other would-do

Laie ester les divers secrois
Let be the diverse secrets

pense de ce que faire dois.
think of that which do thou-oughtest

Se tu veus faire oevre durable
If thou wishest to-make work lasting

qui mult soit bele et convenable
which very may-be fair and fitting

et dont à tos jors soit parole,
and of-which for all days may-be talk

fai ci aporter la carole
make here bring the dance
que gaiant firent en Irlande:
which giants made in Ireland
une mervillose oevre grande
a marvelous work great
de pierres en un cerne asises,
of stones in a circle set
les unes sor les altres mises.
the ones upon the others put
Les pières sont teles et tantes
The stones are such and so-many
et si grosses et si pesantes
and so big and so heavy
que force d'ome qui or soit,
that force of-man who now may-be
nule d'eles ne porteroit:
anyone of-them not would-carry
Merlin, dist li rois, en riant,
Merlin said the king in laughing
dès que les pières poisent tant
as-soon as the stones weigh so-much
que hom nès poroit remuer,
that man not-them could move
qui les poroit ci aporter,
who them could here bring
comme se nous en cest regné
as if we in this realm
avomes de pières chierté.
had of stones dearth

Rois, dist Merlin, et ne ses tu
King said Merlin and not knowest thou
qu'engiens sormonte vertu.
that-device surpasses strength
Bone est force et engins mius valt,
Good is force and device better avails
là vaut engins où force falt;
there avails device where force fails
engins et ars font mainte cose
device and arts make many-a thing
que force commenchier ne n'ose.
which force to-begin nor not-dares
Engins puet les pières movoir
Device can the stones move
et par engin les pùès avoir.
and by device them thou-canst have
D'Aufrique furent aportées,
from-Africa they-were brought
là furent primes compassées.
there they-were first measured-out
Gaiant qui d'aloc les portèrent
Giants who from-there them carried
en Irlande les aloërent.
in Ireland them set

Mult soëlent estre salvables
Very they-are-wont to-be healing
et à malades porfitables
and to sick-ones profitable
li gent les soloient laver
the folk them were-wont to-wash
et de l'ève lor bains temprer
and with the-water their baths to-temper
cil qui estoient engroté
those who were sickened
et d'aucun enferté grevé,
and by-some infirmity burdened
des lavéures bains faisoient;
of-the washings baths they-made
baignoient soi, si garissoient,
they-bathed themselves so they-were-healed
jà por enferté qu'il sentissent
ever for infirmity that-they might-feel
altre méchine n'i quérissent.
other medicine not-there they-sought
Quant li rois et li Breton sorent
When the king and the Britons knew
que les pières tel valor orent,
that the stones such worth had

mult furent tuit entalenté
very they-were all eager
et mult orent grant volenté
and much they-had great will
d'aler aporter la carole
of-going to-bring the dance
dont Merlins faisoit tel parole;
of-which Merlin made such talk
Vter ont ensamble coisi,
Uther they-have together chosen
il méisme s'an poroffri
he himself himself-thereof offered
que en Irlande passeroit
that into Ireland he-would-cross
et quinse mil armés menroit
and fifteen thousand armed would-lead
qui as Irois se combatroient
who with-the Irish themselves would-fight
se les pières lor desfandoient,
if the stones to-them they-forbade
Merlins ensamble à als iroit
Merlin together with them would-go
qui les pières engigneroit.
who the stones would-contrive
Quant Vter a sa gent mandée
When Uther has his folk summoned
en Irlande a la mer passée;
into Ireland he-has the sea crossed

Gilloninius qui estoit rois
Gilloninius who was king
manda sa gent et ses Irois.
summoned his folk and his Irish
Les Bretons prist à manachier
The Britons he-began to threaten
et del païs les vaut chachier;
and from-the country them he-wished to-chase
et quant il sorent qu'il querroient
and when they knew what-they sought
et por pières venu estoient,
and for stones come they-were
assés s'an ala d'als gabant;
plenty himself-thereof he-went of-them mocking
grant folie aloient querrant
great folly they-went seeking
qui aloient por pières querre
who went for stones to-seek
trespassé mer et tante terre:
crossed sea and so-much land
jà une, ce dist, n'en aront,
ever one this he-said not-thereof they-will-have
ne jà une n'emporteront.
nor ever one not-they-will-carry-off
Légièrement les puet despire
Lightly them he-can despise
mais grief furent à desconfire.
but hard they-were to discomfit

Tant despist et tant manaça
So-much he-despised and so-much threatened
et tant les quist qu'il les trova.
and so-much them he-sought that-he them found
Tantost se sunt entrevenu
Straightway themselves they-are met
et bien s'i sont entreféru,
and well themselves-there they-are struck-each-other
n'èrent pas bien Irois armé
not-were at-all well Irish armed
ne de combatre acostumé,
nor to fighting accustomed
les Bretons avoient despit
the Britons they-had in-contempt
mais Bretons les ont desconfit.
but Britons them have discomfited
Li rois s'en est alés fuiant
The king himself-thence is gone fleeing
de vile en vile trestornant.
from town to town turning-about
Li Breton nes porent ataindre
The Britons not-him could reach
si le convient à tant remaindre.
so him it-behooves at that to-stay

The Giants' Dance, and Uther Pendragon

III

Merlin moves by his art the stones that Uther's men cannot stir, and they are raised at Amesbury, where Aurelius wears his crown at Pentecost and gives Caerleon and York to Dubricius and Samson; the Britons call them the Giants' Dance, the English Stonehenge. Pascent, Vortigern's son, brings the Irish king to Wales, and while Aurelius lies sick at Winchester, the Saxon Appas, dressed as a monk and calling himself a doctor, poisons him. A star like a dragon appears, and Merlin reads in it the king's death and Uther's reign. Uther defeats Pascent and the Irish king, is crowned at Winchester, and has two golden dragons made, whence his name Pendragon. Octa besieges York; Uther, driven onto a hill, attacks the sleeping pagans by night on Gorlois's counsel and takes Octa and Eosa, and at his Easter court in London Gorlois sits with his wife Igraine.

Quant Breton furent désarmé
When Britons were disarmed
et il se furent reposé,
and they themselves were rested
Merlins, qui ert en la compaigne,
Merlin who was in the company
les mena en une montaigne
them led into a mountain
où la carole fu asise;
where the dance was set
li gent qui là l'orent conquise
the folk who there it-had conquered
Hilomar li lius avoit nom
Hilomar the place had name
ù li carole estoit en som.
where the dance was on top

Cil ont les pières esgardées,
Those have the stones looked-at
assés les ont avironées.
plenty them they-have gone-around
Et li uns a à l'altre dit.
And the one has to the-other said
Que ainc mais tel oevre ne vit,
That ever more such work not he-saw
com furent ces pières levées
how were these stones raised
et comment seront remuées?
and how will-they-be moved
Signor, dist Merlins, assaiés
Lords said Merlin try
se par vertu que vous aiés
if by strength that you may-have
porois ces pières remuer,
you-will-be-able these stones move
et se vous les poriés porter.
and if you them could carry
Cil se sont as pières aërs
Those themselves are to-the stones clung
derriers, devant et d'entravers.
behind before and across
Bien ont empaint et bien boté
Well they-have pushed and well shoved
et bien empaint et bien crollé.
and well pushed and well shaken

Onques par force la menor
Ever by force the least
ne porent faire prandre un tor:
not they-could make take a turn
traés vous, fait Merlins, en sus.
draw yourselves says Merlin away back
Jà par force n'en seroit plus;
Ever by force not-thereof would-be more
or verrés engin et savoir
now you-will-see device and knowledge
mius que vertu del cors valoir.
better than strength of-the body avail
Dont ala avant, si s'estut,
Then he-went forward so himself-stood
entor garda, les lèvres mut
around he-looked the lips he-moved
comme hom qui dist orison,
like man who says prayer
ne sai s'il dist prière u non.
not I-know if-he said prayer or not
A dont r'a Bretons apelés:
At then in-turn-he-has Britons called
venés avant, fait-il, venés,
come forward says-he come
or poës les pières baillier
now you-can the stones handle
à vos nès porter et cargier.
to your ships carry and load
Si come Merlins ensaigna,
Just as Merlin showed

si com il dist et comanda,
just as he said and commanded
ont li Breton les pières prises
have the Britons the stones taken
as nés portées, et ens mises.
to-the ships carried and in put
Après ont lor voiles levées,
Afterward they-have their sails raised
em Bretaigne les ont menées.
into Britain them they-have brought
En Bretaigne droit arivèrent
In Britain straight they-arrived
à Anbresbère les portèrent
to Amesbury them they-carried
en la montaigne iloc dejoste.
on the mountain there beside
Li rois i vint, à Pentecoste,
The king there came at Pentecost
ses évesques et ses abés
his bishops and his abbots
et ses barons a tos mandés;
and his barons he-has all summoned
altre gent assés assambla
other folk plenty he-assembled
feste tint, si se corona.
feast he-held so himself crowned

Trois jors tint feste et al quart
Three days he-held feast and on-the fourth
dona croces par grant esgart
he-gave crosiers with great regard
à saint Dubris de Karlion
to Saint Dubricius of Caerleon
et d'Euroïc à saint Sanson;
and of-York to Saint Samson
andui erent de grant clergie
both were of great learning
et andui mult de sainte vie.
and both very of holy life
Et Merlins les pières dreça
And Merlin the stones raised
en lor ordre et les aloa.
in their order and them set
Breton les solent en bretans
Britons them are-wont in Breton
apeler Karole as gaians;
to-call Dance of-the giants
Senhange ont non en englois,
Stonehenge they-have name in English
pières pandues en françois.
stones hung in French
Quant la grant feste fu finie,
When the great feast was finished
la cors se fust tant départie,
the court itself had so-much departed
Pascent, un des fils Vortiger,
Pascent one of-the sons (of-)Vortigern

par paor d'Ambroise et douter,
for fear of-Ambrosius and dread
Gales et Bretaigne guerpi,
Wales and Britain forsook
vers Alemaigne s'anfui,
toward Germany himself-thence-fled
homes porcaça et navie
men he-sought-out and fleet
mais n'out mie grant compagnie,
but not-had at-all great company
en Bretaigne nort ariva
in Britain north he-arrived
viles destruit, teres gasta,
towns he-destroyed lands laid-waste
mais longues ester n'i osa,
but long stay not-there he-dared
car li rois vint qui l'an chaça
for the king came who him-thence chased
quant Pascens fu là à la mer,
when Pascent was there at the sea
n'osa là dont il vint passer,
not-he-dared there whence he came cross
tant corut à sigle et à nage
so-much he-ran by sail and by oar
en Irlande vint al rivage;
to Ireland came to-the shore
al roi de la terre parla,
to-the king of the land he-spoke
son estre et son besoing mostra.
his state and his need showed

Tant a Pascens le roi proié
So-much has Pascent the king prayed
et tant ont entr'ax consillié,
and so-much they-have between-them counseled
ce disent que mer passeroient
this they-say that sea they-would-cross
et as Bretons se combatroient,
and with-the Britons themselves would-fight
Pascens por son père vengier
Pascent for his father to-avenge
et por s'irité calangier,
and for his-heritage to-claim
li rois por querre vengement
the king for to-seek vengeance
de cels qui l'orent novelment
on those who him-had newly
lui venqu et sa gent robée,
him vanquished and his folk robbed
et la Karole à als portée.
and the Dance from them carried
Pris se sunt andui par fiance
Pledged themselves are both by faith
de querre à cascuns d'als venjance.
of seeking for each of-them vengeance
Od tant d'esfors com avoir porent
With as-much of-force as have they-could
passèrent mer et bon vent orent;
they-crossed sea and good wind had

en Gales sunt tuit arivé
in Wales are all arrived
et en Meneve sunt entré.
and into Menevia are entered
Meneve ert lors cité bele
Menevia was then city fair
que l'on or saint David apèle.
which one now Saint David calls
Li rois Ambroise languissoit,
The king Ambrosius languished
à Guincestre ert où se gisoit;
at Winchester he-was where himself lay
engroutés ert, longement jut
ailing he-was long he-lay
qu'il ne gari, ne ne mourut.
that-he not recovered nor not died
Quant il ot oï de Pascent
When he had heard of Pascent
et del roi d'Irlande ensement
and of-the king of-Ireland likewise
qui en Gales venu estoient,
who into Wales come were
et sa tère gaster voloient,
and his land to-waste wished
Uter son frère i envoia
Uther his brother there he-sent
n'i pot aler, ce li pêsa.
not-there he-could go this him grieved

A Uter dist qu'il les quésist
To Uther he-said that-he them seek
et que od els se combatist.
and that with them himself fight
Uter a mandé les barons
Uther has summoned the barons
et tos les chevaliers somons.
and all the knights called
Tant por la longe voie aler
As-much for the long way to-go
et tant por la gent aüner
and as-much for the folk to-gather
mult demora, long terme mist
much he-delayed long term put
ains qu'il en Gales parvenist;
before that-he into Wales arrived
endementres qu'il demora
meanwhile that-he delayed
et Appas à Pascent parla;
and Appas to Pascent spoke
Paiens ert, de Sessone nés
Pagan he-was of Saxony born
qui mult estoit enloçonés.
who very was eloquent
De mécines se faisoit sages
Of medicines himself made wise
si savoit parler mains langages;
so knew-how to-speak many languages
fel estoit et de male foi:
felon he-was and of evil faith

Passent, dist-il en son secroi,
Pascent said-he in his secret
tu as pièce le roi haï,
thou hast long-while the king hated
que me donra se jo l'ocis?
what to-me wilt-give if I him-kill
Mult, dist-il, te donrai,
Much said-he thee I-shall-give
ne jamais jor ne te falrai,
nor ever day not thee I-shall-fail
se tu ta parole acomplis
if thou thy word fulfillest
que li rois soit par toi ocis.
that the king be by thee killed
Ne jo, dist-il, plus ne dement;
Nor I said-he more not ask
ensi firent lor convenent,
thus they-made their covenant
Passent de mil livres doner,
Pascent of thousand pounds to-give
et cil del roi empuisoner.
and that-one of-the king to-poison
Et Appas fu mult engignos
And Appas was very cunning
et de parler mult convoitos.
and of speaking very eager
De dras moniax se vesti,
With clothes monkish himself dressed

corone fist, si se tondi
tonsure made so himself shaved
come moines res et tondus,
like monk shaven and shorn
et come moines revestus.
and like monk clad
Od contenance monial
With countenance monkish
est alés à la cort roial;
is gone to the court royal
trichierre fu, mires se fist,
trickster he-was doctor himself made
al roi parla, si li pramist
to-the king spoke so him promised
qu'en brief terme le feroit sain,
that-in short term him would-make sound
s'il se voloit metre en sa main;
if-he himself wished to-put in his hand
tasta al pous et vit l'orine:
felt at-the pulse and saw the-urine
bien set, ce dist, de mal l'orine,
well he-knows this he-said of illness the-origin
bien le sarai médeciner,
well him I-shall-know-how to-treat
qui déust tel home doter?
who ought such man suspect
Li gentis rois garir voloit,
The noble king to-be-healed wished
si com cascuns de vous voldroit.
just as each of you would-wish

N'avoit doute de traïson,
Not-he-had doubt of treason
ès mains se mist à cel félon.
in-the hands himself put of that felon
Et cil li a puison donée
And that-one to-him has potion given
de venin tote destemprée;
with venom all mixed
puis le fist chaudement covrir
then him made warmly cover
et jésir en pais et dormir.
and lie in peace and sleep
Dès que li rois fust escausfés.
As-soon as the king was warmed
Et li venins et cors mellés
And the venom and body mingled
Dex, quel dolor! morir l'estut.
God what grief die him-behooved
Mais quant il sot que morir dut
But when he knew that die he-must
à ses homes dist qu'il gaitoient
to his men he-said that-they watched
si voirement com il l'amoient,
so truly as they him-loved
qu'à Stanhege son cors portaissent
that-to Stonehenge his body they-might-carry
et iloc dedens l'enteraissent.
and there within him-might-bury

Ensi fu mors, ensi fini
Thus he-was dead thus he-ended
et li traîtres s'anfui.
and the traitor himself-thence-fled
Uter fu en Gales entrés,
Uther was into Wales entered
à Menece ot Irois trovés.
at Menevia he-had Irish found
Une estoile est dont aparue
A star is then appeared
qui as pluisors gens fut véue,
which by-the many folk was seen
comant od non, solon clergie,
comet it-had name according-to learning
muement de roi sénéfie,
change of king it-signifies
clere estoit mervillosement
bright it-was marvelously
si jetoit un rai solement.
so it-cast a ray only
Un fu qui de cel rai issoit
A fire which from that ray came-out
figure de dragon portoit,
figure of dragon bore
de cel dragon dui rai issoient
from that dragon two rays came-out
qui par la gole fors sailloient;
which through the throat out leaped

li rais sor France s'estandoit
the ray over France itself-stretched
de si qu'à Mont-Giu luisoit.
until so that-to Mont-Joux it-shone
Li autres vers Irlande aloit,
The other toward Ireland went
et en set rais se devisoit;
and into seven rays itself divided
cascuns des set rais luisoit cler
each of-the seven rays shone bright
et sor la terre et sor la mer.
both over the land and over the sea
Del signe qui fu tex véus
By-the sign which was thus seen
fu li pueples tos comméus.
was the people all stirred
Uter forment s'en mervilla
Uther greatly himself-thereat marveled
et mervellés s'en esfréa.
and marveling himself-thereby frightened
Merlin a proié qui li die
Merlin he-has prayed that to-him he-may-say
que si fais signes sénéfie;
what so made sign signifies
et Merlins mult se contorba,
and Merlin much himself troubled
dol ot au coer, mot ne sona.
grief he-had at-the heart word not sounded
Quant ses espéris repaira,
When his spirit returned

mult se plaint et mult sospira:
much himself he-laments and much sighed
he Dex, dist-il, com grans dolors,
ah God said-he what great grief
com grans damages, com grans plors
what great damage what great weeping
est hui avenus em Bretaigne.
is today happened in Britain
Perdu a son bon chavetaigne;
Lost it-has its good captain
mors est li rois, li bons vassax
dead is the king the good vassal
qui de dolors et de grans max
who from griefs and from great ills
a ceste terre délivrée
has this land delivered
et des mains as Paiens jetée.
and from-the hands of-the Pagans thrown
Quant Uter oï de son frère,
When Uther heard of his brother
son bon signor qui finés ere;
his good lord who ended was
mult fu dolans, mult s'esmaia,
very he-was grieved much himself-dismayed
mais Merlins le réconforta:
but Merlin him comforted
Uter, dist-il, ne t'esmaier,
Uther said-he not thee-dismay
n'i a de mors nul recovrer;
not-there is of death any recovery

esploite ce que tu as quis,
pursue that which thou hast sought
combat toi à tes anemis,
fight thee with thy enemies
la victoire demain t'atent
the victory tomorrow thee-awaits
del roi d'Irlande et de Pascent.
over-the king of-Ireland and over Pascent
Demain te combat, si vaincras
Tomorrow thee fight so thou-wilt-conquer
et de Bretaigne rois seras;
and of Britain king thou-wilt-be
li signes qui fu del dragon
the sign which was of-the dragon
li fist signification
to-it made signification
de toi qui es prous et hardis.
of thee who art worthy and bold
Li uns des rais, ce est uns fis
The one of-the rays this is a son
que tu aras, de grant puissance,
whom thou wilt-have of great power
qui conquerra jusqu'oltre France.
who will-conquer as-far-as-beyond France
Par l'autre rai qui ça torna,
By the-other ray which hither turned
et en set rais se devisa,
and into seven rays itself divided

c'est une fille demostrée
this-is a daughter shown
qui vers Escoce ert mariée.
who toward Scotland will-be married
Pluisor bon oir de li naistront
Several good heirs from her will-be-born
qui mers et terres conquerront.
who seas and lands will-conquer
Quant Uter a bien escouté
When Uther has well listened-to
ce que Merlins li ot conté,
that which Merlin to-him had told
la nuit fist sa gent reposer
the night he-made his folk rest
et par matin les fist armer.
and in-the morning them he-made arm
La cité voloit assalir,
The city he-wished to-assail
mais Irois qui virent venir
but Irish who saw come
prisent lor armes, conrois firent
took their arms troops made
et à combatre fors issirent.
and to fight out went
Fierement se sont combatu,
Fiercely themselves they-are fought
mais assés tost furent venqu,
but quite soon they-were vanquished

car Breton ocisent Pascent
for Britons killed Pascent
et le roi d'Irlande ansement;
and the king of-Ireland likewise
cil qui remesent al camp vif
those who remained in-the field alive
s'entornèrent par mer fuitif.
themselves-turned-away by sea fugitive
Uter qui's a séus après
Uther who-them has followed after
les fist morir tos desconfès;
them made die all unconfessed
tex i ot qui en escapèrent
such-ones there were who thence escaped
et en lor nés fuiant entrèrent,
and into their ships fleeing entered
et en mer se fisent empaindre,
and to sea themselves made push
por ce ne pot Uter ataindre.
for this not could Uther reach
Quant il ot fait tot son afaire,
When he had done all his business
vers Guincestre prist son repaire
toward Winchester he-took his return
le miax à als de son barnage.
the best of them of his baronage

En la voie encontre un message
On the way he-meets a messenger
qui li a dit veraiement
who to-him has said truly
que li rois est mors et comment,
that the king is dead and how
et li evesque par grant cure
and the bishops with great care
avoient fait sa sépulture
had made his sepulcher
dedens la gaiole as gaians,
within the cage of-the giants
si com il dist à ses sergans
so as he said to his sergeants
et à ses barons, à sa vie.
and to his barons in his life
Quant Uter ot la cose oïe
When Uther had the thing heard
à Guincestre s'en vint pongnant
to Winchester himself-thence he-came spurring
et li pules li vint devant,
and the people to-him came before
criant et braiant à halt cri:
crying and shouting with high cry
Uter, sire, por Deu merci,
Uther lord for God mercy
mors est cil qui nous maintenoit
dead is that-one who us maintained
et qui le grant bien nous faisoit,
and who the great good to-us did

or no mentoie, prant la coronne
now not lie take the crown
qui érité et lois nous done;
which heritage and law to-us gives
et nos, biax sire, te prion
and we fair lord thee pray
qui ton prou et t'onor volon.
who thy profit and thy-honor wish
Uter vit que ses prous estoit
Uther saw that his profit it-was
et que miex faire ne pooit,
and that better do not he-could
lies fu de ce que cil li distrent
glad he-was of that which those to-him said
et s'emprès fist ce qu'il requistrent.
and so-forthwith he-did that which-they asked
La corone prist, rois devint,
The crown he-took king he-became
la gent ama, l'onor maintint.
the folk he-loved the-fief he-maintained
Par l'onor et par démostrance
For the-honor and for showing
del dragon la sénéfiance
of-the dragon the signification
qui prous estoit et rois seroit
who worthy was and king would-be
et oirs bien conquerans aroit,
and heirs well conquering would-have

fist faire Uter d'or deux dragons
made make Uther of-gold two dragons
par le consel à ses barons.
by the counsel of his barons
L'un en fist devant soi porter
The-one of-them he-made before himself carry
quant en bataille dut aler;
when into battle he-was-to go
l'autre a à Guincestre envoié
the-other he-has to Winchester sent
à l'iglise de l'Evesquié.
to the-church of the-bishopric
Tostans puis par cette aquoison
Always afterward by this occasion
fu només Uter pandagron:
was named Uther Pendragon
Pandragon as nons en bretans,
Pendragon he-has name in Breton
cief de dragon en romans.
head of dragon in romance
Uther fust mult de grant poissance
Uther was very of great power
et en ce ot mult grant fience,
and in this he-had very great faith

ainçois que il fust coroné
before that he was crowned
que par seingne fust demonstré
that by sign it-was shown
que rois seroit et heirs auroit
that king he-would-be and heirs would-have
dont grant repallance seroit;
of-which great renown would-be
ce li dona grant vasselage
this to-him gave great prowess
et mult granment en son corage
and very greatly in his heart
en sa vie vout encomplir,
in his life he-wished to-accomplish
fut bien ou mal, ne voust guerpir
it-were good or ill not he-wished to-forsake
quar bien savoit, et veirs estoit,
for well he-knew and true it-was
que de quanque il enprandroit
that of whatever he would-undertake
à bon chief vendroit à la fin,
to good end he-would-come at the end
si mençongier n'estoit Merlin:
if liar not-were Merlin
por ce ne vout onc riens douter
for this not he-wished ever anything to-fear
trestoz ses faiz vout achever.
all his deeds he-wished to-achieve

Octa qui fius Henguist estoit,
Octa who son (of-)Hengist was
à cui li rois doné avoit
to whom the king given had
grans terres et grans mansions
great lands and great dwellings
à lui et à ses compaignons;
to him and to his companions
quant il oï que cil ert mors
when he heard that that-one was dead
qui maintenoit les grans esfors,
who maintained the great forces
petit prisa le novel roi,
little he-prized the new king
loialté ne li tint ne foi;
loyalty not to-him he-kept nor faith
amis et parens assambla
friends and kinsmen he-assembled
ses cosins od lui Eossa;
his cousin with him Eosa
cil dui furent maistre sor tos
those two were masters over all
et cil dui furent des plus pros.
and those two were of-the most worthy
La gent qui Passent a maisnée,
The folk whom Pascent has led
qui od Uter ert escapée,
who with Uther was escaped
ont retenu en lor aïe,
they-have retained in their aid

assés orent de compaignie;
plenty they-had of company
la terre ont cil tote conquise
the land have those all conquered
si com li Hombre le devise
so as the Humber it divides
vers Escoce, de lonc, de lé,
toward Scotland in length in breadth
puis sont à Euroïc entré.
then they-are into York entered
La cité entor asaillirent
The city around they-assailed
et cil dedens se desfendirent
and those within themselves defended
que paien nule rien n'i prisent
so-that pagans any thing not-there took
mais grant gent orent, si l'asisent.
but great folk they-had so it-besieged
Uter valt sa cité socolre
Uther wished his city to-succor
et ses amis dedens rescolre;
and his friends within to-rescue
à Euroïc s'an vint esrant,
to York himself-thence he-came straightway
de totes pars sa gent mandant.
from all sides his folk summoning
Del siège valt paien partir
From-the siege he-wished pagans to-part
si les ala manois férir:
so them he-went at-once to-strike

aspre fu et gries li mellée;
harsh was and grievous the melee
mainte ame i ot de cors sevrée;
many-a soul there was from body severed
li paien orent grant vertu
the pagans had great strength
si se sont bien entreféru.
so themselves they-are well struck-each-other
Nés porent pas Breton grever
Not-them could at-all Britons harm
ne dedens, aus à force entrer;
nor within them by force enter
en sus les estut resortir.
away back them it-behooved to-withdraw
Et quant s'en volrent départir,
And when themselves-thence they-wished to-part
cil del siège les porsivirent
those of-the siege them pursued
qui mervillos damage i firent.
who marvelous damage there did
Tant les ont alés porsivant
So-much them they-have gone pursuing
d'ores à altres ataignant,
from-hours to others reaching
à un mont les vinrent menant
to a mount them they-came leading
et la nuit departi atant;
and the night parted at-that

Daniens li mons avoit nom
Daniens the mount had name
auques estoit agus en som;
somewhat it-was pointed on top
roces i ot et grans destrois
rocks there were and great narrows
et environ espès coldrois.
and around thick hazels
Breton s'i sont al mont aërs
Britons themselves-there are to-the mount clung
tant d'entort et tant d'entravers,
so-much around and so-much across
le tertre ont tot à mont porpris,
the mound they-have all to top occupied
et li paien les ont assis
and the pagans them have besieged
qui desos erent en la plaigne,
who below were in the plain
entor asisent la montaigne.
around they-besieged the mountain
Li rois fu à mult grant esfroi
The king was in very great alarm
que de ses homes, que de soi;
as-well for his men as for himself
en grant dote fu qu'il feroient,
in great doubt he-was what-they would-do
com faitement garir poroient.
how in-manner be-saved they-could

Gornois un quens Cornvalois
Gorlois a count Cornish
mult prous et saiges et cortois,
very valiant and wise and courtly
ert od le roi, forment d'aage
was with the king greatly of-age
et mult estoit tenus à sage.
and very was held for wise
A celui ont consel requis
To him they-have counsel asked
et lor afaire sor lui mis;
and their affair on him put
car il ne féist coardie
for he not would-do cowardice
por perdre membre, ne por vie:
for to-lose limb nor for life
consoil, dist-il, me demandés,
counsel said-he of-me you-ask
mes consaus est, se vos volés,
my counsel is if you wish
que céléement nous armon
that secretly we arm-ourselves
et de cest tertre dévalon,
and from this mound descend
noz anemis alons férir
our enemies let-us-go to-strike
qui asséur quident dormir.
who secure think to-sleep

Il n'en ont paor, ne dotance
They not-thereof have fear nor doubt
que encontre als porton mais lance,
that against them we-bear ever lance
le matinet nous quident prendre,
the morning us they-think to-take
se ici les volon atendre;
if here them we-wish to-await
alons à als soldéément
let-us-go to them suddenly
et si férons hardiement,
and so let-us-strike boldly
mar i aura ordre tenu:
ill there will-be order kept
ne cor soné, ne cri ne hu;
nor horn sounded nor cry nor shout
ançois qu'il soient esvillié
before that-they be awakened
en aurons nous tant detrancié,
of-them shall-have we so-many cut-down
jà cil qui nos escaperont
ever those who from-us will-escape
mais contre nous n'i torneront.
more against us not-there will-turn
Mais primes à Deu prometon
But first to God let-us-promise
que vers lui nous amenderon,
that toward him we shall-amend

et del pechié que fait avon
and of-the sin that done we-have
pénitance et pardon querron.
penance and pardon we-shall-seek
Et guerpisson nos félonies
And let-us-forsake our felonies
que fait avons, totes nos vies;
which done we-have all our lives
et deproions al salvéor
and let-us-pray to-the Savior
qu'il nous maintigne et dont vigor
that-he us may-maintain and give vigor
contre cels qui en Deu ne croient
against those who in God not believe
et qui ses crestiens guerroient.
and who his Christians war-on
Por ce ert Dex ensamble nous
For this will-be God together-with us
et si serons par lui rescols;
and so we-shall-be by him rescued
et dès que Dex od nous sera
and as-soon as God with us will-be
qui est qui nos desconfira?
who is-it who us will-defeat
Par le consel que cil dona,
By the counsel that that-one gave
ensi com il dist et loa,
thus as he said and advised

ont pramis as Dex humlement
they-have promised to God humbly
de lor vies amendement.
of their lives amendment
Dont sont armé, et à célé
Then they-are armed and in secret
s'an sont del tertre dévalé;
themselves-thence they-are from-the mound descended
Paiens trovèrent tos gisans,
Pagans they-found all lying
tos désarmés et tos dormans.
all disarmed and all sleeping
Dont véissiés grant tuéis
Then you-might-see great slaughter
et mervillos deglavéis;
and marvelous carnage
ventres perchier et esfondrer,
bellies pierce and burst
testes et piés et poins voler.
heads and feet and fists fly
Si comme lions orgillos
Just as-a lion proud
qui de longes est famillos,
who for long is famished
ocit motons, ocit berbis,
kills rams kills ewes
ocit agniax grans et petis,
kills lambs big and small
altresi li Breton faisoient,
likewise the Britons did

povres et rices ocioient.
poor and rich they-killed
Par le camp furent endormi,
Through the field they-were asleep
après furent si esbahi
afterward they-were so dismayed
onques n'i tinrent plait d'armer
ever not-there they-held plea of-arming
ne d'iloc ne porent torner.
nor from-there not could turn
Et li Breton les déglavoient
And the Britons them slaughtered
qui tos sans armes les trovoient,
who all without arms them found
percent ventres, percent corailles,
they-pierce bellies pierce entrails
traient boëles et entrailles;
they-draw bowels and entrails
là furent mort tot li paien
there were dead all the pagans
ocis les ont li Crestien.
killed them have the Christians
Li signor, qui la guerre murent,
The lords who the war moved
Octa et Ossa pris i furent;
Octa and Eosa taken there were
à Londres furent envoié
to London they-were sent
et en cartre pris et loié.
and in prison taken and bound

Se aucuns del camp escapa,
If anyone from-the field escaped
la nuit oscure le salva:
the night dark him saved
qui fuir s'am pot, si fui,
who flee himself-thence could so fled
onques ami n'i atandi;
ever friend not-there he-awaited
mult plus en i ot lors d'ocis
much more of-them there were then of-killed
que il n'en escapa de vis.
than it not-of-them escaped of living
Quant Uter fu d'iloc tornés,
When Uther was from-there turned
par Norhumberlande est passés.
through Northumberland he-is passed
De Norhumberlande en Escoce,
From Northumberland into Scotland
à grant navie et à grant force,
with great fleet and with great force
la terre a tote avironée
the land he-has all gone-round
tant com ele est et longe et lée;
as-much as it is both long and wide
la gent qui estoit sans justice
the people who was without justice
a tote atrait à son service.
he-has all drawn to his service
Par tot le raine tel pais mist,
Through all the realm such peace he-put

onques rois al si grant ne fist.
ever king other so great not made
Quant vers north ot fait son afaire
When toward north he-had done his business
à Londre se mist el repaire;
to London himself he-set on-the return
et li jors de Pasques venoit
and the day of Easter was-coming
que il coroner se voloit.
on-which he to-crown himself wished
Dus et contes et castelains
Dukes and counts and castellans
et les lontains et les proçains,
and the distant and the near
et trestot son altre barnage
and all his other baronage
somont par bref et par message,
he-summons by writ and by message
que od lor femes esposées
that with their wives wedded
et od lor maisnies privées,
and with their households private
à Londres soient à sa feste,
at London they-be at his feast
car mult la veult tenir honeste.
for very it he-wishes to-hold honorable
Tuit vinrent si com il manda,
All came just as he commanded
et qui femme ot si l'amena.
and who wife had so her-brought

Bien fu li feste célébrée,
Well was the feast celebrated
et quant li messe fut cantée,
and when the mass was sung
al manger est assis li rois
at-the meal is seated the king
al cief de la sale à un dois;
at-the head of the hall at a dais
li baron s'asisent entor,
the barons themselves-sat around
cascuns en l'ordre de s'onor.
each in the-order of his-honor
Devant lui ert, enmi le vis,
Before him was in-mid the view
li quens de Cornuaille assis.
the count of Cornwall seated
Lès lui fust Ygerne sa fenne,
Beside him was Igraine his wife
il n'ot si bele en tot le règne;
there not-was so fair in all the realm
cortoise estoit et bele et sage
courtly she-was and fair and wise
et mult estoit de halt parage.
and very she-was of high lineage

Uther and Igraine

IV

Uther, who has long heard Igraine praised, courts her at the feast with looks and gifts; Gorlois leaves without leave and shuts her in Tintagel, and Uther besieges him in another castle. On Ulfin's advice he sends for Merlin, who gives him Gorlois's likeness, and to Ulfin and himself those of Jordan and Bertel; that night Uther lies with Igraine and Arthur is begotten. Gorlois is killed defending his castle, and Uther takes Tintagel and marries Igraine, who bears Arthur and Anna, whose son by Lot of Lothian is Gawain. When Uther falls sick, Octa and Eosa escape; carried in a litter, he kills them before Verulam, and the Saxons poison the spring he drinks from. He is buried at Stonehenge, and the bishops crown Arthur, fifteen years old, who swears war on the Saxons and besieges Colgrin in York.

Li rois en ot oï parler
The king of-her had heard speak
et mult l'ot oïe loer.
and much her-he-had heard praise
Ains que il samblant en féist,
Before that he show thereof made
voire assés ains qu'il la véist,
indeed long before that-he her saw
8790 l'ot il convoitie et amée
her-had he coveted and loved
car à mervelles ert loée.
for to marvels she-was praised
Mult l'a al mangier agardée,
Much her-he-has at-the meal watched
s'entente i a tote tornée:
his-attention there he-has all turned
se il manjoit, se il bevoit,
if he ate if he drank

se il parloit, se il taisoit,
if he spoke if he was-silent
totes ores à li pansoit
all hours of her he-thought
et en travers la regardoit,
and in sidelong her he-looked
en regardant li sorioit
in looking at-her he-smiled
et d'amor signe li faisoit,
and of-love sign to-her he-made
par ses privés la saluoit
by his intimates her he-greeted
et son présant li envooit.
and his present to-her he-sent
Mult li a ris et mult clignié,
Much at-her he-has laughed and much winked
et maint samblant fait d'amistié.
and many-a show made of-friendship
Ygerne ainsi se contenoit,
Igraine thus herself bore
n'otrioit ne n'scondisoit:
not-granted nor not-refused
as gas, as ris, as cenemens
at-the jests at-the laughs at-the signals
et as salus et as présens,
and at-the greetings and at-the presents
le santi bien le quens et sot
it felt well the count and knew
que li rois sa moillier amot;
that the king his wife loved

ne jà foi ne li porteroit
nor ever faith not to-him would-bear
se il en aise la tenoit.
if he at ease her held
De la table ù il sist, sailli,
From the table where he sat he-leapt
sa feme prist, si s'anfui.
his wife he-took so himself-thence-fled
Ses compaignons a apelés,
His companions he-has called
al ceval vint, si est montés.
to-the horse he-came so is mounted
Li rois après li a mandé
The king after him has sent-word
que li fait hontage et vilté
that to-him does shame and vileness
qui sans congié va de sa cort,
who without leave goes from his court
face li droit, arière tort,
make to-him right back turn
et se il de ce se deffalt
and if he of this himself fails
desfié l'a quel part qu'il alt;
defied him-he-has which side that-he go
ne se puet mie à lui fier
not himself can at-all in him trust
s'il ne valt mie retorner.
if-he not wishes at-all to-return

De la cort ala sans congié
From the court he-went without leave
et li rois l'a mult manacié.
and the king him-has much threatened
Mais li quens à petit le tint,
But the count at little it held
ne sot pas ce que puis l'en vint.
not knew at-all that which after him-thence came
En Cornuaille reverti,
Into Cornwall he-returned
deus castiax avoit, si's garni.
two castles he-had so-them furnished
Sa feme mist en Tintaiol
His wife he-put in Tintagel
qui fu son père et son aiol.
which was his father's and his grandfather's
Tintaiol estoit desfensables,
Tintagel was defensible
n'estoit de nule part prenables:
not-was from any side takable
de faloise ert clos et de mer
by cliff it-was closed and by sea
qui sol la porte puet garder;
who only the gate can guard
mar ara doute, ne regart
ill he-will-have fear nor regard
que hom i entre d'autre part.
that one there enter from-other side

Li quens a là Ygerne enclose;
The count has there Igraine shut-in
en autre liu metre ne l'ose
in other place put not her-dares
que toloite n'i soit et prise,
that taken-away not-there she-be and seized
por ce l'a en Tintaioel mise.
for this her-he-has in Tintagel put
Et il mena ses soldiers
And he led his hirelings
et le plus de ses chevaliers
and the most of his knights
à un castel fort que il ot
to a castle strong that he had
qui le plus de son fiu gardot.
which the most of his fief guarded
Li rois sot qu'il se garnissoit
The king knew that-he himself fortified
et qu'il de lui se desfendroit.
and that-he from him himself would-defend
Tant por le conte guerroier,
As-much for the count to-war-on
tant por la contesse aprouchier,
as-much for the countess to-approach
sa grant gent a tote assamblé
his great folk he-has all assembled
et l'eve de Tambre a passé.
and the-water of Tamar he-has crossed
Al castel ù li quens ert vint,
To-the castle where the count was he-came

prendre la vaut, mais il se tint
to-take it he-wished but it itself held
et il i a le siège mis.
and he there has the siege laid
Une semaine i avoit sis
A week there he-had sat
que il ne pot le castel prendre,
that he not could the castle take
et li dus ne se voloit rendre,
and the duke not himself wished to-surrender
car le roi d'Irlande atandoit
for the king of-Ireland he-awaited
qui al socor venir devoit.
who to-the succor come was-to
Li rois haï le demorier,
The king hated the delay
si li a pris à anoier,
so him it-has begun to irk
l'amor Ygerne le hastoit
the-love (of-)Igraine him hastened
que il sor tote rien amoit.
whom he above all thing loved
Ulfin, un sien baron privé,
Ulfin a his-own baron intimate
a privéément apelé:
he-has privately called
Ulfin, dist-il, conselle moi,
Ulfin said-he counsel me
tot mon consel ai mis en toi;
all my counsel I-have put in thee

l'amor Ygerne m'a sopris
the-love (of-)Igraine me-has overtaken
et tot m'a vainqu et conquis.
and all me-has vanquished and conquered
Ne puis aler, ne puis venir,
Not I-can go nor I-can come
ne puis villier, ne puis dormir,
not I-can wake nor I-can sleep
ne puis lever, ne puis colchier,
not I-can rise nor I-can lie-down
ne puis boire, ne puis mangier
not I-can drink nor I-can eat
que d'Ygerne ne me soviegne,
that of-Igraine not to-me it-come-to-mind
mais ne sai comment jo la tiegne.
but not I-know how I her may-hold
Mors sui, se tu ne me conselles:
Dead I-am if thou not me counsel
o roi, ce dist Ulfins, mervelles.
o king this said Ulfin marvels
Le conte avés grévé de guerre
The count you-have grieved with war
et à escil métés sa terre
and to ruin you-put his land
et lui cloés en cest castel,
and him you-shut in this castle
quidiés qu'à sa fame soit bel.
think-you that-to his wife it-be pleasing
Et sa feme et lui guerroiés,
Both his wife and him you-war-on

ne sai pas comment vous l'aiés.
not I-know at-all how you her-may-have
Ne vous en sai consel doner,
Not you thereof I-know counsel to-give
mais faites Merlin demander
but make Merlin summon
qui de fort art est en bon us
who of strong art is in good use
et il est en ceste ost venus;
and he is into this host come
se il ne vous set consillier,
if he not you knows-how counsel
nus ne vous en poroit aidier.
anyone not you thereof could help
Li rois, par le consel Ulfin,
The king by the counsel (of-)Ulfin
fist mander et venir Merlin.
made summon and come Merlin
Tot li a son besong mostré
All to-him he-has his need shown
et puis li a merci crié,
and then to-him has mercy cried
que son consel li doint s'il puet,
that his counsel to-him he-give if-he can
car sans confort morir l'estuet
for without comfort die him-behooves
se d'Ygerne son bon ne fait.
if of-Igraine his pleasure not he-does
Mais quiere et porcace qu'il l'ait,
But let-him-seek and contrive that-he her-have

del sien li donra mult, s'il velt,
of-the his-own to-him he-will-give much if-he wishes
car mult a mal, et mult se delt:
for much he-has pain and much himself grieves
sire, dist Merlins, tu l'aras,
lord said Merlin thou her-wilt-have
jà por Ygerne ne morras;
ever for Igraine not thou-wilt-die
tot t'en ferai avoir ton bon,
all thee-thereof I-shall-make have thy pleasure
jà mar me donra rien del ton.
never ill me will-give anything of-the thine
Mais Ygerne est forment gardée
But Igraine is strongly guarded
et en Tyntaiol enfermée.
and in Tintagel shut-up
Li castiax est mult bien fermés
The castle is very well closed
et de vitailles asasés.
and with victuals stocked
Jà ne sera pris par esfors
Ever not it-will-be taken by force
de nul siège qui tant soit fors;
by any siege which so-much be strong
bien seroit l'entrée et l'issue
well would-be the-entrance and the-exit
par deus bons homes desfandue,
by two good men defended

mais jo enterrai bien dedens
but I shall-enter well within
par noviax médecinemens.
by new remedies
Figure d'ome sai muer
Figure of-man I-know-how to-change
et l'un en l'altre retorner;
and the-one into the-other turn
l'un fas bien à l'altre sambler
the-one I-make well to the-other resemble
et l'uns fas bien à l'altre per;
and the-one I-make well to the-other equal
le cors, le vis, la contenance
the body the face the bearing
et la parole et la samblance
and the word and the semblance
que li quens a de Cornuaille
that the count has of Cornwall
te ferai bien avoir sans faille.
thee I-shall-make well have without fail
Que t'en feroie jo lonc conte?
Why thee-thereof would-make I long tale
Tel te ferai comme le conte,
Such thee I-shall-make as the count
et jo, qui avec toi irai,
and I who with thee shall-go
la samblance Bertel prandrai;
the semblance (of-)Bertel shall-take

et Ulfins qui od nous sera
and Ulfin who with us will-be
del tot Jordain resamblera;
of-the all Jordan will-resemble
li quens a forment ces deus chiers
the count has greatly these two dear
et sont si privé consilliers.
and they-are his intimate counselors
Ensi pues entrer u castel
Thus thou-canst enter into-the castle
et tot acompli ton avel:
and all accomplish thy desire
jà n'i sera aparcéus
ever not-there will-be perceived
ne par altre home mescréus.
nor by other man suspected
Li rois a bien Merlin créu
The king has well Merlin believed
et son consel à bon tenu;
and his counsel for good held
à un baron privéément,
to a baron privately
livra la cure de sa gent.
he-delivered the care of his folk
Merlins fist les encantemens,
Merlin made the enchantments
vis lor mua et vestemens.
faces to-them he-changed and clothes
En Tyntaioel, le soir, entrèrent;
Into Tintagel the evening they-entered

cil qui connoistre le quidèrent
those who know him thought
les ont recéus et servis
them have received and served
et la nuit durement joïs.
and the night greatly welcomed
Mult par estoient bien venu
Very much they-were well come
et à lor seignour l'ont tenu.
and for their lord him-have held
Li rois à Ygerne se jut
The king with Igraine himself lay
et Ygerne la nuit conçut
and Igraine the night conceived
le bon roi, le fort, le séur
the good king the strong the sure
que vous oës nomer Artur.
whom you hear name Arthur
Illuec fu Artus engenrés
There was Arthur begotten
qui tant fu prous et redoutés.
who so was valiant and feared
Li gent al duc sorent bientost
The folk of-the duke knew soon
que li rois n'estoit mie à l'ost.
that the king not-was at-all at the-host
N'i ot baron qui il criensissent,
Not-there was baron whom they feared
ne por qui rien faire volsissent.
nor for whom anything to-do they-would-wish

Por le domorer qu'il dotèrent,
For the delaying that-they feared
lor armes prisent, si s'armèrent;
their arms they-took so themselves-armed
sans faire eschièle, sans conroi
without making battalion without array
au castel vinrent à desroi,
to-the castle they-came in disorder
que li Breton orent assis,
which the Britons had besieged
n'en partiront, si l'oront pris.
not-thence they-will-part till it-they-will-have taken
De totes pars ont assailli
From all sides they-have assailed
et li quens fort se desfendi,
and the count strongly himself defended
mais au desfendre fu ocis,
but in-the defending he-was killed
et li castiax fust sempre pris.
and the castle was straightway taken
Alquant qui d'iloc escapèrent,
Some who from-there escaped
à Tyntaioel nonchier l'alèrent
to Tintagel announce it-they-went
comment lor ert mésavenu
how to-them it-was ill-befallen
de lor signor qu'orent perdu.
of their lord whom-they-had lost

As novèles que cil disoient
At-the news which those told
qui del conte la mort plagnoient,
who of-the count the death lamented
leva li rois, avant sailli:
rose the king forward leapt
taisiés, dist-il, n'est mie issi,
be-silent said-he not-it-is at-all so
tot sui vis et sains, Deu merci!
all I-am alive and sound God's mercy
Si com vous povés véoir ci;
Just as you can see here
ceste novele n'est pas voire,
this news not-is at-all true
ne tot croire, ne tot mescroire.
nor all believe nor all disbelieve
Mais je vos dirai bien porquoi
But I you shall-tell well why
ma gent est à dote de moi;
my folk is in doubt of me
del castel sans congié tornai
from-the castle without leave I-turned
si que à home n'em parlai,
so that to man not-of-it I-spoke
ne dis mie que fors issise
nor I-said at-all that out I-went
ne que jo ça à vous venisse,
nor that I here to you came
car de traïson me dotoie:
for of treason myself I-feared

mai or criement que ocis soie
but now they-fear that killed I-be
porceque il ne m'ont véu
because they not me-have seen
puis que li rois u castel fu.
since that the king in-the castle was
De mes homes qui ocis sunt
Of my men who killed are
et del castel qui perdu ont
and of-the castle which lost they-have
nous puet mult torner à anui,
us can much turn to grief
mais bien estoit quant jo vis sui;
but well it-was when I alive am
contre le roi là fors istrai
toward the king there out I-shall-go
pais querre, si m'acorderai;
peace to-seek so myself-I-shall-reconcile
ançois que cest castel asiece
before that this castle be-besiege
et que il noax nous eschiece,
and that it worse to-us befall
car se il caiens nous soprent,
for if he in-here us surprises
nous plaiderons puis malement.
we shall-plead then badly
Ygerne à le consel loë
Igraine has the counsel approved
qui tostans a le roi doté,
who always has the king feared

et li rois l'a dont embracié,
and the king her-has then embraced
si l'a au départir baisié.
so her-he-has at-the parting kissed
A tant est del castel issus,
At that he-is from-the castle gone-out
tot a ses désiriers éus.
all he-has his desires had
Quant fors furent à lor cemin,
When out they-were on their way
li rois et Ulfin et Merlin
the king and Ulfin and Merlin
teus fust cascuns com estre dut,
such was each as be he-ought
et cascuns sa forme reçut.
and each his form received
A l'ost vinrent délivrement;
To the-host they-came speedily
savoir voloit li rois comment
know wished the king how
li castiax fu si tost conquis
the castle was so quickly conquered
et comment li quens fu ocis.
and how the count was killed
Assés fu qui li a conté
Plenty there-was who to-him has told
de l'un et de l'altre verté.
of the-one and of the-other truth
Del conte li pesa, ce dist,
Of-the count to-him it-grieved this he-said

qui ert ocis, pas ne volist;
who was killed at-all not he-would-wish
à ses homes s'an coroça
with his men himself-thence angered
et malvais samblant lor mostra.
and bad countenance to-them showed
Samblant fist que mult l'en pesast,
Show he-made that much him-thereof grieved
mais poi i ot qui le quidast.
but few there were who it believed
A Tintaiol est retornés,
To Tintagel he-is returned
cels du castel a apelés,
those of-the castle he-has called
dist lor a porquoi se desfendent,
said to-them he-has why themselves they-defend
mors est li quens le castel rendent;
dead is the count the castle let-them-render
ne pueent mais avoir socors
not they-can more have succor
de la contrée, ne d'aillors.
from the country nor from-elsewhere
Cil sorent que li rois dist voir,
Those knew that the king said true
ne de rescosse n'ont espoir;
nor of rescue not-they-have hope
les portes del castel olvrirent,
the gates of-the castle they-opened
la forterece li randirent.
the fortress to-him they-rendered

Li rois qui ot Ygerne amée
The king who had Igraine loved
sans essone l'a espossée;
without delay her-he-has wedded
la nuit a un fil concéu
the night she-has a son conceived
et al terme a un fil éu.
and at-the term she-has a son had
Artus ot non, de sa bonté
Arthur had name of his goodness
a grant parole puis esté.
has great talk since been
Après Artus fu Anna née,
After Arthur was Anna born
une fille, qui fu donée
a daughter who was given
à un baron qui fu cortois,
to a baron who was courtly
Lot avoit non de Loënois.
Lot he-had name of Lothian
De li fu nés li quens Walwains
Of her was born the count Gawain
qui tant fu preudom de ses mains.
who so was worthy of his hands
Uter raina bien longement,
Uther reigned well long
sains et sals et paisiblement.
sound and safe and peacefully

Puis empira al cief del cor
Then he-worsened at-the end of-the course
qu'il caï en une langor;
that-he fell into a languor
de grant enfermeté langist,
of great infirmity he-languishes
longement jut si aféblist.
long he-lay so weakened
Sergant qui à Londres estoient,
Sergeants who at London were
qui la chartre garder devoient,
who the prison guard were-to
cascuns en estoit anoiés
each thereof was weary
et de pramesse fu loiés.
and by promise was bound
Octa fils Hangist délivrèrent
Octa son (of-)Hengist they-delivered
et de la prison le jetèrent.
and from the prison him cast
Et Eosa, son compagnon,
And Eosa his companion
que par promesse, que par don,
as-well by promise as by gift
la garde des prisons guerpirent
the guard of-the prisoners they-forsook
et o les prisons s'enfoïrent.
and with the prisoners themselves-fled

Quant cil furent en lor contrées
When those were in their countries
et lor genz r'orent asamblées,
and their folk again-had assembled
assez ont Uther menacié
plenty they-have Uther threatened
et grant navie ont porchacié.
and great fleet have procured
Od grans torbes de chevaliers,
With great throngs of knights
et od sergans et od archiers
and with sergeants and with archers
sont en Escoce trespassé
they-are into Scotland crossed
et le païs ars et robé.
and the country burned and robbed
Uter qui malades estoit
Uther who sick was
et qui aidier ne se pooit,
and who help not himself could
por sa terre, por lui desfendre,
for his land for him to-defend
livra sor tos à Lot son gendre
he-delivered above all to Lot his son-in-law
la cure de ses os guier
the care of his hosts to-guide
et des chevaliers soldéer,
and of-the knights to-pay

à eeus dist qu'à Loth entendissent
to them he-said that-to Lot they-attend
et ce qu'il lor diroit féissent,
and that which-he to-them would-say they-do
porce que cortois ert et larges,
because that courtly he-was and generous
et assés prous et assés sages.
and plenty valiant and plenty wise
Octa les Bretons guerroia
Octa the Britons warred-on
et mult od gent, mult s'orgilla
and much had folk much himself-swelled
tant por la feblèce al roi,
as-much for the feebleness of-the king
tant por vengier son père et soi,
as-much for to-avenge his father and himself
Bretaigne mist à grant esfroi,
Britain he-put in great alarm
n'i valt doner trive, ne foi.
not-there he-wished to-give truce nor faith
Et Lot l'a sovent encontré
And Lot him-has often encountered
et sovent la débareté;
and often him-has routed
mainte foïe l'a vainqu
many-a time him-has vanquished
et mainte foie i a perdu
and many-a time there has lost
car costume est d'itel olvraigne
for custom is of-such work

qui teus i pert qui puis gaaigne.
that such-a-one there loses who afterward gains
Puet cel estre Lot le vainquit,
May that be Lot him vanquished
et del pais hors le méist
and from-the country out him would-have-put
mais li Breton s'entrorgillèrent
but the Britons themselves-grew-proud
et sa somonce desdaignèrent,
and his summons disdained
porce q'altre si franc estoient
because that-others so free were
et altre tant ou plus avoient.
and other as-much or more had
Ensi dura li guerre et crut
Thus lasted the war and grew
tant que li rois s'an aperçut,
so-long that the king himself-thereof perceived
et cil del païs dit li ont
and those of-the country told him have
que li baron faignant s'en vont.
that the barons shirking themselves-thence go
Oés d'ome de grant fierté
Hear of-man of great fierceness
nel' laia pas por s'enferté:
not-it he-left at-all for his-infirmity
ne valt mais, ce dist, remanoir,
not he-wished more this he-said to-remain
ses barons velt en ost véoir.
his barons he-wishes in host to-see

Porter s'a fait, si com em bière,
Carry himself-he-has made just as in bier
à chevax, en une litière:
with horses in a litter
or verra, ce dist, qui l' suira,
now he-will-see this he-said who him will-follow
et qui od lui en ost ira.
and who with him in host will-go
Cels fist mander et cels somondre
Those he-made summon and those call
qui ne daignoient Lot respondre
who not deigned Lot answer
ne lui, ne son commandement;
nor him nor his command
à lui vinrent délivrément.
to him they-came speedily
A Eurolane vint li rois droit
To Verulam came the king straight
qui à cel tans cité estoit,
which at that time city was
Saint Anbans i fu martyriés,
Saint Alban there was martyred
mais puis fu li lius escilliés
but afterward was the place laid-waste
et la cité tote destruite.
and the city all destroyed
Là a Octa sa gent conduite
There has Octa his folk led
et par dedens la cité mise.
and through within the city put

Et li rois l'a defors assise;
And the king it-has outside besieged
engins fist faire al mur froissier,
engines he-made make to-the wall to-shatter
mais fort furent, ne's pot brisier.
but strong they-were not-them could break
Octa et li sien s'esbaldirent
Octa and the his-own themselves-made-bold
qui des engins se desfendirent;
who from-the engines themselves defended
à un matin la porte olvrirent
on a morning the gate they-opened
por als esbatre, fors issirent.
for themselves to-sport out they-went
Desdaing lor sambla et vile cose
Scorn to-them it-seemed and vile thing
que porte fu por le roi close
that gate was for the king closed
qui em bière les guerroioit,
who in bier them warred-on
et em bière em bataille aloit;
and in bier into battle went
mais lor orgoel, jo croi, lor nut
but their pride I believe them harmed
et cil vainquit qui vaincre dut.
and that-one conquered who conquer ought
Venqus fut et ocis Octa
Vanquished was and killed Octa
et ses bons cosins Eossa;
and his good cousin Eosa

pluisor qui s'an sont escapé
several who themselves-thence are escaped
sont vers Escoce trespassé.
are toward Scotland crossed
Lor signor firent de Colgrin
Their lord they-made of Colgrin
ami Octa et son cosin.
friend (of-)Octa and his cousin
Por la victore et por l'onor
For the victory and for the-honor
que Dex dona al roi, cel jor,
which God gave to-the king that day
est il de joie sus salis,
is he for joy up leapt
com se il fust sains et garis,
as if he were sound and healed
forment se prist à esforchier
greatly himself he-took to exert
por ses barons reslééchier.
for his barons to-gladden
Quant dreciés se fu en estant,
When raised himself he-was to standing
à ses homes dist en riant:
to his men he-said in laughing
mius voel jo en biere jésir
better wish I in bier to-lie
et en longe enfreté langir,
and in long infirmity to-languish

que estre sains et en vertu
than be sound and in strength
et estre à deshonor venqu;
and be in dishonor vanquished
mult valt mix morir à honor
much is-worth better to-die in honor
que longes vivre à deshonor.
than long to-live in dishonor
Saisne m'ont tenu en despit
Saxons me-have held in contempt
porce que jo sui en mon lit,
because that I am in my bed
mais or a, ce nous est avis,
but now has this to-us is opinion
li demis mors vainqus les vis.
the half dead vanquished the living
Alons soentre cels qui fuient,
Let-us-go after those who flee
qui mon fie et les vos destruient.
who my fief and the yours destroy
Quant li rois ot un pou esté
When the king had a little been
et à ses homes ot parlé,
and to his men had spoken
soentre les fuitis alast,
after the fugitives he-would-have-gone
jà por l'enferté nel laiast;
ever for the-infirmity not-it he-would-have-left

mais li baron li ont rové
but the barons him have asked
que il sojort en la cité
that he sojourn in the city
tant que Dex del mal le reliet,
so-long that God from-the illness him relieve
car mult criement que li en griet.
for much they-fear that to-him thereof harm-come
Ensi remest qu'il nès sivi,
Thus it-remained that-he not-them followed
malades giut, l'ost départi.
sick he-lay the-host dispersed
Sa gent en a tote envoïe
His folk thence he-has all sent
fors sole la privée maisnie.
except only the private household
Li Saisne qui furent cacié,
The Saxons who were chased
quant il se furent ralié,
when they themselves were rallied
ce pensèrent, ci orent tort,
this they-thought here they-had wrong
que s'il le roi avoient mort,
that if-they the king had killed
il n'aroit oir qui lor nuisist
he not-would-have heir who them might-harm
ne qui la terre lor tolsist.
nor who the land from-them might-take

Murtrir le volrent par puison
To-murder him they-wished by poison
par engin et par trahïson,
by guile and by treason
car en lor armes ne se fient
for in their arms not themselves they-trust
tant que par lor armes l'ocient.
so-much that by their arms him-they-kill
Omes ont eslis malfaisans,
Men they-have chosen evildoers
ne vous sai dire quels ne qans,
not you I-can say which nor how-many
deniers et terres lor promisrent,
pennies and lands to-them they-promised
à la cort al roi les tramisrent,
to the court of-the king them they-sent
vestus en povre vestéure,
clothed in poor clothing
por espier en quel mesure
for to-spy in what measure
poroient al roi avenir
they-could to-the king come
et s'il le poroient mordrir.
and if-they him could murder
Cil se misrent en tapinage
Those themselves put in disguise
qui apris orent maint langage,
who learned had many-a language

de la cort al roi s'aprochièrent
of the court of-the king themselves-approached
et de la cort l'estre espièrent.
and of the court the-lay spied
Ne porent pas tant espier
Not they-could at-all so-much spy
qu'al roi péussent aprochier;
that-to-the king they-might approach
mais tant ont alé et venu
but so-much they-have gone and come
qu'il ont oï, qu'il ont véu
that-they have heard that-they have seen
que li rois eve froide usoit,
that the king water cold used
nule autre boire ne gostoit:
any other drink not he-tasted
car l'eve estoit à son mal saine,
for the-water was for his illness healthful
tostans bevoit d'une fontaine
always he-drank from-a spring
qui joste la sale sordoit,
which beside the hall sprang
nule altretant ne li plaisoit:
any as-much not him pleased
cil qui la mort al roi querroient
those who the death of-the king sought
et qui ocire le voloient,
and who to-kill him wished

quant virent qu'il n'i avenroient
when they-saw that-they not-there would-attain
et par arme ne l'ociroient,
and by arm not him-would-kill
la fontaine ont envenimée,
the spring they-have poisoned
puis sont fui de la contrée
then they-are fled from the country
qu'il ne fuissent entercié;
that-they not might-be recognized
entendu ont et orillié
heard they-have and listened
quant et comment li rois morroit,
when and how the king would-die
qu'à brief terme s'anfuiroit.
that-in short term himself-thence-would-flee
Quant li rois volt boire et il but,
When the king wished to-drink and he drank
entosciés fu, morir l'estut,
poisoned he-was die him-behooved
de l'eve but, emprès enfla,
of the-water he-drank after swelled
taint et noircist, semprès fina.
discolored and blackened straightway ended
Et tot cil qui de l'eve burent
And all those who of the-water drank
emprès la mort al roi morurent,
after the death of-the king died

tant que li cose fu séue
until that the thing was known
et li malisse apercéue.
and the malice perceived
Dont fu la commune assamblée
Then was the commons assembled
et fut li fontaine estopée;
and was the spring stopped
tant i ont de terre porté
so-much there they-have of earth carried
un moncel ont desus levé.
a mound they-have above raised
Quant Uter li rois fu finés,
When Uther the king was ended
à Estenges en fu portés,
to Stonehenge thence he-was carried
iloc dedens fu enterés
there within he-was buried
joste son frère, lès à lès.
beside his brother side by side
Li evesque s'entremandèrent
The bishops each-other-summoned
et li baron s'entrasamblèrent.
and the barons themselves-assembled
Artus le fil Uter mandèrent,
Arthur the son (of-)Uther they-summoned
à Circestre le coronèrent;
at Circestre him they-crowned

jovenciax estoit de quinze ans
youth he-was of fifteen years
de son aage fors et grans.
for his age strong and big
Les teces Artus vous dirai,
The qualities (of-)Arthur you I-shall-tell
noiant ne vous en mentirai:
at-all not you thereof I-shall-lie
chevalier fu mult vertuos,
knight he-was very valiant
mult proisans et mult glorios.
very worthy and very glorious
Contre orgilleus fu orgillos
Against proud-men he-was proud
et contre humle dols et pitos,
and toward humble gentle and pitying
fors et hardis et conquerrans,
strong and bold and conquering
et se besoigols le requist,
and if needy-man him asked
s'aider li pot, ne l'escondist.
if-help him he-could not him-refused
Mult ama pris, mult ama glore,
Much he-loved praise much he-loved glory
mult valt son fait metre en memore;
much he-wished his deed put in memory
servir se fist cortoisement
serve himself he-made courteously
et mult se maintaint noblement.
and much himself bore nobly

Tant com il vesqui et raina,
As-long as he lived and reigned
tos autres princes sormonta
all other princes he-surpassed
de cortoisie et de proesce
in courtesy and in prowess
et de valor et de largece.
and in valor and in largesse
Quant Artus fu rois novelment
When Arthur was king newly
de son gré fist un saïrement
of his will he-made an oath
que jamais Saisne pais n'aront
that ever Saxons peace not-will-have
tant com en la tere seront;
as-long as in the land they-will-be
son oncle et son père ont ocis
his uncle and his father they-have killed
et tot ont torblé le païs.
and all they-have troubled the country
Sa gent manda, soldiers quist,
His folk he-summoned hirelings sought
mult lor dona, mult lor pramist.
much to-them he-gave much to-them promised
Tant somont gent et tant esra
So-much he-summons folk and so-much journeyed
qu'en Euroïc oltre passa.
that-to York beyond he-passed

Colgrin, qui puis la mort Octa
Colgrin who after the death (of-)Octa
maintint les Saines et guia;
maintained the Saxons and guided
Escos et Pis ot en s'aïe
Scots and Picts he-had in his-aid
et des Saines grant compaignie.
and of-the Saxons great company
Encontre Artus s'ala combatre
Against Arthur himself-went to-fight
et son orgoil voloit abatre.
and his pride wished to-strike-down
De joste l'eve de Guldas
From beside the-water of Douglas
s'entrevinrent à un trespas,
each-other-they-met at a ford
là commencièrent la bataille
there they-began the battle
li un l'autre forment asaille;
the one the-other strongly assails
mult en i caï d'ambes pars
many of-them there fell of-both sides
à lances, à qariax, as dars,
by lances by bolts by-the darts
mais venqus fu à la parfin
but vanquished was at the end
et s'en ala fuiant Colgrin.
and himself-thence went fleeing Colgrin

Artus qui l'ala poursuiant
Arthur who him-went pursuing
en Euroïc le vint caçant;
into York him came chasing
Colgrins en la cité se mist
Colgrin in the city himself put
et Artus environ l'asist.
and Arthur around it-besieged

Arthur Against the Saxons

V

Balduf, coming to his brother Colgrin's aid, is surprised by Cador and enters York as a harper with his beard half shaved. When Cheldric lands, Arthur draws back to London and sends for his nephew Hoel of Brittany. Together they relieve Lincoln, shut the Saxons in the wood of Colidon, and let them go for hostages; the Saxons turn back, land at Totnes, and ravage to Bath. Arthur hangs the hostages, arms himself with Caliburn, made in Avalon, and a shield painted with Saint Mary, and wins at Bath, where Colgrin and Balduf die; Cador kills Cheldric short of his ships. Arthur relieves Hoel at Alclud, starves the Scots in the islands of Loch Lomond, drives off the Irish king Diramaurus, spares the Scots when their bishops and women beg for mercy, and tells the marveling Hoel of two stranger pools, one by the Severn.

Balduf frère Colgrin estoit
Balduf brother (of-)Colgrin was
qui sor la marine atandoit
who on the shore awaited
Saisnes d'Alemaigne et Heldric.
Saxons of-Germany and Cheldric

Quant il oï q'à Euroïc
When he heard that-at York
ot Artus son frère aségié
had Arthur his brother besieged
et qu'il l'avoit de camp cacié;
and that-he him-had from field chased
dolans fu et mult en ot doel
grieved he-was and much thereof had sorrow
avolc son frère fust son voel;
with his brother he-were his wish
la sente de Cheldric laissa,
the path of Cheldric he-left
à cinq liues de l'ost ala,
at five leagues from the-host he-went
si s'ambusca en un boscage;
so himself-ambushed in a wood
que des homes de son linage
as-well of-the men of his lineage
que d'estranges qu'il ot menés
as of-strangers that-he had led
avoit ot lui sis mil armés.
he-had with him six thousand armed
Par nuit voloit l'ost estormir
By night he-wished the-host to-assault
et faire del siège partir;
and make from-the siege depart
mais alcuns qui l' vit embuschier
but someone who him saw ambush
le corut al roi acointier.
it ran to-the king to-make-known

Artus sot de Balduf l'agait;
Arthur knew of Balduf the-ambush
à un conseil a Cadort trait,
to a counsel he-has Cador drawn
qui estoit quens de Cornuaille,
who was count of Cornwall
qui por morir n'i féist faille,
who for dying not-there would-make failure
livra lui set cent chevaliers
he-delivered him seven hundred knights
et de la geude trois milliers.
and of the foot-folk three thousands
Si's envoia céléement
So-them he-sent secretly
sor Balduf en l'embuscement.
upon Balduf in the-ambush
Onques li Saisne mot n'en sorent,
Ever the Saxons word not-thereof knew
ne cri, ne noise oï n'en orent
nor cry nor noise heard not-thereof had
de si que Cador s'escria
up to that Cador himself-cried-out
qui del férir ne s'atarga.
who of-the striking not himself-delayed
Plus en a mort de la moitié;
More of-them he-has killed than the half
jà n'en laiast aler un pié,
ever not-of-them he-would-have-let go a foot

se la nuit oscure ne fust
if the night dark not had-been
et se li bois ne li tolust.
and if the wood not from-him took
Balduf s'en trestorna fuiant,
Balduf himself-thence turned fleeing
de buison en buison muçant;
from bush to bush hiding
perdu ot de sa compagnie
lost he-had of his company
le miax et la forçor partie;
the best and the stronger part
ne se sot comment consillier
not himself he-knew how to-counsel
que son frère péust aidier:
that his brother he-might help
mult volentiers à lui parlast
very willingly to him he-would-have-spoken
se il péust, ou il osast.
if he could or he dared
Al siège ala comme jonglère
To-the siege he-went as minstrel
si fainst que il estoit harpère;
so feigned that he was harper
il avoit apris à chanter,
he had learned to sing
et lais et notes à harper.
and lays and tunes to harp

Por aler parler à son frère
For to-go speak to his brother
se fist par mi la barbe rère,
himself he-made through middle the beard shave
et le cief par mi ensement
and the head through middle likewise
et un des grenons seulement;
and one of-the mustaches only
bien sambla lécéor et fol,
well he-seemed rogue and fool
une harpe prist à son col.
a harp he-took at his neck
Piece s'est issi contenus
A-while himself-is thus borne
que de nul n'i fu mescréus;
that by anyone not-there he-was suspected
tant ala sus et jus harpant
so-much he-went up and down harping
et de la cité aproçant,
and of the city approaching
que cil del mur l'ont entercié,
that those of-the wall him-have recognized
si l'ont à cordes sus sacié;
so him-they-have with ropes up drawn
ja erent al désesperer,
already they-were at-the despairing
al fuir, et al escaper,
at-the fleeing and at-the escaping

quant la novele vint as très
when the news came to-the tents
que venus ert, à cinq cent nés,
that come was with five hundred ships
Cheldric à Escoce, à un port,
Cheldric to Scotland to a port
et au siège venoit à fort;
and to-the siege came in force
mais il quidoit bien et savoit
but he thought well and knew
que jà Artus ne l'atandroit,
that ever Arthur not him-would-await
et si fist, il ne l'atandi;
and so he-did he not him-awaited
car ce li disent si ami
for this to-him told his friends
que il pas Cheldric n'atandist,
that he at-all Cheldric not-should-await
ne à lui ne se combatist.
nor with him not himself should-fight
Gent avoit mervillose et fière;
Folk he-had marvelous and fierce
à Londres se traisist arière,
to London himself he-should-draw back
et se Cheldric là le suioit,
and if Cheldric there him followed
plus asséur se combatroit;
more secure himself he-would-fight
car ses communes manderoit,
for his commons he-would-summon

et sa gent cascun jor croistroit.
and his folk each day would-grow
Artus a ses barons créus,
Arthur has his barons believed
à Londres est à als venus.
to London he-is to them come
Dont véissiés terre meller,
Then you-might-see land stir
castiax garnir, gent esfréer.
castles provision folk take-fright
Artus de ce se consilla
Arthur of this himself counseled
que por Hoël envoiera,
that for Hoel he-will-send
son nevou fil de sa soror,
his nephew son of his sister
roi de Bretaigne la menor:
king of Britain the lesser
là sont si baron, si cosin
there are his barons his cousins
et li millor gent de son lin.
and the best folk of his line
A Hoël a son brief tramis
To Hoel he-has his letter sent
et par message l'a requis;
and by message him-has asked
manda lui, s'il ne li ajue,
he-sent-word to-him if-he not him help
qu'il a sa terre enfin perdue;
that-he has his land at-last lost

mult ert grant honte à son linage
very will-be great shame to his lineage
si pert ensi son héritage.
if he-loses thus his heritage
Hoël oït la grant besoigne,
Hoel heard the great need
n'i quist contredit ne essoigne;
not-there he-sought objection nor excuse
et si baron et si parent
and his barons and his kinsmen
s'aparillent isnèlement.
themselves-prepare quickly
Lor nés ont tot aparillies
Their ships they-have all prepared
et d'omes et d'armes garnies.
and with-men and with-arms furnished
Douse mil orent chevaliers,
Twelve thousand they-had knights
estre sergans, estre archiers:
besides sergeants besides archers
bon oré orent, mer passèrent,
good wind they-had sea they-crossed
al port à Hantosne arivèrent.
at-the port at Southampton they-arrived
Artus à joie le reçut,
Arthur with joy him received
et à honor, si com il dut.
and with honor just as he ought
N'i firent nul demorement,
Not-there they-made any delay

ne plait de lor contenement.
nor plea of their bearing
Li rois a ses geldes mandées
The king has his foot-troops summoned
et ses maisnies assamblées;
and his households assembled
sans noise et sans longe parole,
without noise and without long word
alèrent ensamble à Nicole
they-went together to Lincoln
que li fel Cheldric ot assise,
which the felon Cheldric had besieged
mais ne l'avoit pas encor prise.
but not it-had at-all yet taken
Artus fist ses homes armer
Arthur made his men arm
sans cor et sans graille soner,
without horn and without trumpet sounding
trestot desporvéuément
all unexpectedly
corurent sor l'averse gent.
they-ran upon the-hostile folk
Onques si laide ocision,
Ever so ugly slaughter
ne si laide destruision,
nor so ugly destruction
ne tel escil, ne tel dolor
nor such ruin nor such grief
ne fu de Saisnes en un jor.
not was of Saxons in one day

Jetent armes, laient cevax,
They-throw-down arms leave horses
fuient par mont, fuient par vax;
they-flee by mountain they-flee by vales
par les èves vont trébuçant
through the waters they-go stumbling
et mult espessement noiant.
and very thickly drowning
Breton qui les suient as dos,
Britons who them follow at-the backs
ne lor laient avoir repos:
not them let have rest
des espées donent grans cols
with-the swords they-give great blows
ès cors et es cies et es cols.
on-the bodies and on-the heads and on-the necks
De si al bos de Colidon
Up so-far to-the wood of Colidon
s'en alèrent fuiant Saison.
themselves-thence went fleeing Saxons
De totes pars sunt al bos trait,
From all sides they-are to-the wood drawn
si ont al bos lor atrait fait;
so they-have at-the wood their stand made
et Breton ont le bois gardé
and Britons have the wood guarded
et entor l'ont avironé.
and around it-have surrounded

Artus dota que s'anfuissent
Arthur feared that themselves-thence-might-flee
et que par nuit del bois ississent:
and that by night from-the wood they-might-go-out
d'une part fist le bois tranchier
on-one side he-made the wood cut
et bien espessement plaissier;
and well thickly interweave
arbre sor arbre traverser,
tree upon tree lay-across
et tronc sor tronc fist encroer.
and trunk upon trunk he-made hook-together
De l'autre part se herberga
On the-other side himself he-lodged
puis n'en issi nus, ne entra.
then not-thence went-out anyone nor entered
Cil del bois forment s'esmaièrent
Those of-the wood greatly themselves-dismayed
qu'il ne burent, ne ne mangièrent:
that-they not drank nor not ate
il n'i ot tant fort, ne savant,
it not-there had so strong nor knowing
ne tant rice, ne tant vaillant,
nor so rich nor so valiant
qui jà éust od soi porté
who ever had with himself carried
ne pain, ne vin, ne car, ne blé;
nor bread nor wine nor meat nor grain

n'i orent que trois jors esté
not-there they-had but three days been
que de faim furent tot maté.
that of hunger they-were all checkmated
Quant virent que de faim moroient
When they-saw that of hunger they-were-dying
et que par force n'en iroient,
and that by force not-thence they-would-go
consel prisent quel plait feroient;
counsel they-took what plea they-would-make
lor robe et lor armes lairoient;
their goods and their arms they-would-leave
lor nés solement retanroient,
their ships only they-would-keep
et al roi ostage donroient
and to-the king hostage they-would-give
que tostans mais pais li randroient,
that always more peace to-him they-would-render
et treu par ans li soldroient,
and tribute by years to-him they-would-pay
se vis les en laioit aler
if alive them thence he-let go
et sans armes lor nés mener.
and without arms their ships take
Artus a cel plait créanté,
Arthur has that plea granted
congié lor a d'aler doné;
leave to-them has of-going given

ostages retint remanans
hostages he-kept remaining
de lui tenir ses convenans:
for him keep his covenants
lor nés lor a totes rendues
their ships to-them he-has all rendered
et lor armes a retenues;
and their arms he-has retained
et cil s'en sont mis à l'aler
and those themselves-thence are set to the-going
sans robe et sans armes porter.
without goods and without arms to-carry
Loing erent à une véue,
Far they-were at a sight
la tère avoit jà perdue,
the land they-had already lost
ne sai quel consel il trovèrent
not I-know what counsel they found
ne que cil furent qu'il loërent,
nor who those were who-it advised
mais retorné ont la navie
but turned-back they-have the fleet
entre Engletere et Normendie.
between England and Normandy
Tant ont nagié, tant ont siglé
So-much they-have rowed so-much they-have sailed
en Destremue sont entré;
into Dartmouth they-are entered
à Totenois vinrent al port.
to Totnes they-came at-the port

Es vous pule destruit et mort?
Behold you people destroyed and dead
De lor nès à la tère issirent,
From their ships to the land they-went-out
par tot le païs s'espandirent,
through all the country themselves-spread
armes quisrent et robes prisrent,
arms they-sought and goods they-took
maisons arsent, homes ocistrent;
houses they-burned men they-killed
le païs ont tot traversé
the country they-have all crossed
et pris quanqu'il i ont trové.
and taken whatever-they there have found
As vilains lor armes toloient
From-the peasants their arms they-took
de méisme les ocioient.
with the-same them they-killed
De Neversire et Sormersete
Of Devonshire and Somerset
et grant partie de Dorsete,
and great part of Dorset
ont escillié et mis à gast,
they-have ravaged and put to waste
ne trovèrent qui's destorbast;
nor they-found who-them hindered
li baron qui alques pooient
the barons who aught could
en Escoce od le roi estoient.
in Scotland with the king were

Tant par campaignes, tant par voies,
So-much by fields so-much by roads
robes portent et mainent proies;
goods they-carry and lead booty
de si a Bade Saison vindrent,
up so-far to Bath Saxons came
mais cil qui ens erent se tindrent.
but those who within were themselves held
Artus qui en Escoce estoit
Arthur who in Scotland was
et cels d'Escoce destruioit,
and those of-Scotland destroyed
por ce qu'il l'orent guerroié
for this that-they him-had warred-on
et à Cheldric orent aidié,
and to Cheldric had helped
quant il sot que Paien faisoient
when he knew what Pagans were-doing
qui à Bade siége tenoient,
who at Bath siege held
ses ostages fist tantost pendre,
his hostages he-made at-once hang
ne's valt garder, ne plus atendre.
not-them he-wished to-keep nor more to-wait
Hoël de Bretaigne guerpi
Hoel of Brittany he-left
dont il se tint à mal bailli,
whereof he himself held for ill served
gisant en Alqus la cité,
lying in Alclud the city

ne sai de quel enfermeté.
not I-know of what infirmity
A tant de gent comme il ot, 9485
With as-much of folk as he had
vint à Bade com ains pot;
he-came to Bath as first he-could
le siège voloit départir
the siege he-wished to-break
et ses homes dedens garir.
and his men within to-save
Jostes un bois en une plagnes
Beside a wood in a plain
fist Artus armer ses compagnes; 9490
made Arthur arm his companies
sa gent parti et ordena
his folk he-divided and ordered
et il méismes se r'arma:
and he himself himself re-armed
ses cauces de fer a calcies
his hose of iron he-has put-on
beles et bien aparillies;
fair and well made
hauberc et bon et bel vestu 9495
hauberk both good and fair donned
tel qui à tel roi disnes fu.
such that for such king worthy was
Calabrum ot cainte s'espée
Caliburn he-had girded his-sword
qui bien fu longe et bien fu lée;
which well was long and well was broad

en l'ile d'Avalon fu faite,
in the-isle of-Avalon it-was made
qui la tint nue mult s'en haite.
who it held bare much himself-thereof delights
Helme avoit en son cief luisant
Helm he-had on his head shining
et fu d'or li nasaus devant,
and was of-gold the nasal in-front
et d'or li chercles environ,
and of-gold the circlet around
en som ot portrait un dragon.
on top it-had portrayed a dragon
En l'elme ot mainte pière clère;
In the-helm were many-a stone bright
il ot esté Uter son père.
it had been (of-)Uther his father
Sor un ceval monta mult bel
Upon a horse he-mounted very fair
et fort et corant et isnel;
and strong and running and swift
son escu a mis à son col,
his shield he-has put at his neck
ne sambla pas coart ne fol.
not he-seemed at-all coward nor fool
De l'escu fu, par grant maistrie,
On the-shield was by great mastery
de ma dame sainte Marie
of my lady saint Mary
portaite et faite li semblance,
portrayed and made the likeness

por honor, et por ramembrance.
for honor and for remembrance
Lance avoit roide de Saison,
Lance he-had stiff of Saison
acérés fu li fers en son.
steeled was the iron at top
Alques ert long, et alques lés
Somewhat it-was long and somewhat broad
mult ert en besogne dotés.
much it-was in need feared
Quant Artus a sa gent mandée
When Arthur has his folk summoned
et por bataille conraée,
and for battle arrayed
le petit pas les fist esrer;
the little pace them he-made go
n'en valt laier un desraer
not-thence he-wished to-let one break-rank
de si qu'il vinrent al férir,
until so that-they came to-the striking
mais cil nel' porent sostenir.
but those not-it could sustain
A un mont qui près ert tornèrent
To a mount which near was they-turned
et qui ains ains à mont montèrent.
and who first first to top mounted
Iloc se sunt contretenu
There themselves they-are held-out
et iloc s'i sunt desfendu
and there themselves-there are defended

com se il fuissent clos de mur;
as if they were closed by wall
mais poi i furent aséur,
but little there they-were secure
car Artus les a envaï
for Arthur them has attacked
qui lor voisinèce haï.
who their neighborhood hated
Contremont les ala suiant,
Uphill them he-went following
et ses homes amonestant:
and his men exhorting
véés, dist-il, par devant vos
see said-he through before you
les desloiax, les orgillos
the disloyal the proud
qui vos parens et vos cosins,
who your kinsmen and your cousins
et vos amis et vos voisins
and your friends and your neighbors
vous ont destruit et escilliés
you have destroyed and ravaged
et vous meismes damagiés.
and you yourselves harmed
Vengiés vos amis, vos parens;
Avenge your friends your kinsmen
vengiés les grans destruimens,
avenge the great destructions

vengiés les pertes, les travax
avenge the losses the toils
qu'il nos ont fait par tans assax!
which-they us have done by so-many assaults
Jo vengerai les félonies,
I shall-avenge the felonies
jo vengerai les foi menties;
I shall-avenge the faiths lied
jo vengerai mes ancissors
I shall-avenge my ancestors
et les pertes et les dolors,
and the losses and the griefs
et vengerai la revenue
and I-shall-avenge the return
que il ont fait à Destremue.
which they have made at Dartmouth
Se entr'ax nous poon embatre
If among-them we can thrust
et de cel tertre aval abatre,
and from that mound down strike
jà contre nous n'aresteront,
ever against us not-they-will-stand
ne desfence vers nous n'aront.
nor defense toward us not-they-will-have
A ces paroles Artus point
At these words Arthur spurs
et al empoindre l'escu joint;
and at-the charging the-shield clasps
ne sai quel des Saines ataint,
not I-know which of-the Saxons he-reaches

et al empoindre mort l'estaint;
and at-the thrust dead him-quenches
oltre s'empasse si s'escrie:
beyond himself-passes so himself-cries
aïe Dex, Sainte Marie,
help God Saint Mary
mieus est, dist-il, li premiers cols,
best is said-he the first blow
à cestui ai son loier sols.
to this-one I-have his wage paid
Dont véissiés Bretons aidier,
Then you-might-see Britons help
Saines abatre et detranchier.
Saxons strike-down and cut-to-pieces
De totes pars les avironent,
From all sides them they-surround
lancent et botent, et cols donent.
they-hurl and thrust and blows give
Artus fut de mult grant asprèce,
Arthur was of very great fierceness
de grant vigor, de grant proëce,
of great vigor of great prowess
l'escu levé, l'espée traite,
the-shield raised the-sword drawn
a contremont la voie faite;
has uphill the way made
destre, senestre, mult en tue,
right left many of-them he-kills
la presse a tote dérompue;
the press he-has all broken

quatre cens il sels en ocist,
four hundred he alone of-them killed
plus que tote sa gent ne fist.
more than all his folk not did
Faire lor faisait male fin,
Make them he-made ill end
mors fu Balduf, mors fu Colgrin.
dead was Balduf dead was Colgrin
Et Cheldric s'en ala fuiant,
And Cheldric himself-thence went fleeing
il et autre par un pandant;
he and others by a slope
à lor nés voloient vertir
to their ships they-wished to-turn
et als entrer et als garnir.
and themselves enter and themselves equip
Artus sot que il s'enfuioient
Arthur knew that they themselves-thence-fled
et qu'il as nés torner voloient.
and that-they to-the ships to-turn wished
Cador de Cornuaille a pris,
Cador of Cornwall he-has taken
après les fuians l'a tramis;
after the fleeing him-has sent
od lui dix mil chevaliers
with him ten thousand knights
et des millors et des plus chiers,
and of-the best and of-the most dear
Artus en Escoce torna,
Arthur into Scotland turned

car un mès vint qui li nonça
for a messenger came who to-him announced
que cil d'Escoce orent assis
that those of-Scotland had besieged
Hoel, à poi ne l'orent pris.
Hoel by little not him-had taken
Cheldric fuioit à la navie,
Cheldric fled to the fleet
mais Cador fu de grant voisdie:
but Cador was of great cunning
par une voie qu'il savoit
by a way that-he knew
d'aler à Totenès plus droit,
of-going to Totnes more straight
Cheldric et sa gent dévanci,
Cheldric and his folk he-forestalled
as nès vint, d'omes la garni;
to-the ships he-came with-men them furnished
archiers i mist et païsans,
archers there he-put and peasants
puis ala contre les fuians;
then he-went against the fleeing
dui et dui, trois et trois venoient
two and two three and three they-came
si com il mius fuir pooient.
just as they best flee could
Por aler plus légièrement
For to-go more lightly
et por fuir délivrément,
and for to-flee freely

avoient lor armes jetées,
they-had their arms thrown-away
ne portoient que lor espées;
not they-carried but their swords
de venir as nés se hastoient
of coming to-the ships themselves they-hastened
car par les nés garir quidoit,
for by the ships be-saved they-thought
à trespasser l'ève de Traine,
at crossing the-water of Teign
lor vint Cador criant s'ensaine:
to-them came Cador crying his-war-cry
es vous les Saissons esbaïs
behold you the Saxons dismayed
et sus et jus tos départis.
and up and down all scattered
Al mont puier de Ténédic
At-the mount climbing of Tenedic
fu atains et ocis Cheldric;
was overtaken and killed Cheldric
li altre, si com il venoient,
the others just as they came
à glaive et à dolor moroient;
by sword and in grief died
et cil qui escaper pooient,
and those who escape could
de totes pars as nés fuioient,
from all sides to-the ships fled

et cil dedans les ocioient
and those within them killed
et en la mer les afondroient.
and in the sea them sank
Teus i avoient quis' ocioient,
Such there were who-themselves killed
teus i avoient qui se rendoient;
such there were who themselves surrendered
par boscages et par montaignes
through woods and through mountains
s'an vont fuiant, à grans compaignes.
themselves-thence go fleeing in great companies
Tuit si mucent et tant i furent
All so hide and so-long there were
qui de faim et de soif morurent.
that of hunger and of thirst they-died
Quant Cador ot fait tel ocise
When Cador had made such slaughter
et tote la terre em pais mise,
and all the land in peace put
après Artus s'acemina,
after Arthur himself-set-out
et vers Escoce s'en ala.
and toward Scotland himself-thence went
Artus a trové en Alclut,
Arthur has found in Alclud
son nevou avoit secorut;
his nephew he-had succored

tot l'avoit sain et salf trové
all him-he-had sound and safe found
et tot gari de s'enferté.
and all healed of his-infirmity
Escot del siège s'enfuirent
Scots from-the siege themselves-thence-fled
quant novèle d'Artus oïrent;
when news of-Arthur they-heard
et en Murif loing s'enfuirent
and into Moray far themselves-thence-fled
et en la cité se garnirent.
and in the city themselves fortified
Là quidèrent Artus atendre
There they-thought Arthur to-await
et là se quidèrent desfendre;
and there themselves they-thought to-defend
Artus sot qu'il se rasambloient
Arthur knew that-they themselves reassembled
et contre lui se ralioient.
and against him themselves rallied
De si à Murif les sivi;
Up so-far to Moray them he-followed
mais il s'en sunt avant fui,
but they themselves-thence are forward fled
en l'estang de Lymonoï
into the-pool of Lomond
sunt par les illes départi.
they-are through the isles dispersed
Li lais estoit grant et parfons,
The lake was great and deep

car de valées et de mons
for from valleys and from mountains
soisante èves dedens caoient
sixty waters within fell
et aloc totes remanoient,
and there all remained
fors une qui de mer descent
except one which to sea descends
par une issue solement.
by one outlet only
En l'estanc a soixante isliax,
In the-pool are sixty islets
et grant repère i a d'oisiax;
and great haunt there is of-birds
en chascune isle a un rochier,
in each isle is a rock
iluec suelent aigle nigier,
there are-wont eagles to-nest
fere lor niz et tenir haire,
make their nests and hold eyrie
ensi come je oï retraire;
thus as I heard recount
qant male gent venir soloient
when wicked folk come were-wont
qui Escoce gaster devoient,
who Scotland waste were-to
tuit li eigle s'entrasambloient,
all the eagles themselves-assembled
combatoient soi et crioient:
fought themselves and cried

un jour, ou deus, ou trois, ou catre,
one day or two or three or four
les véissiez antrecombatre;
them you-might-see fight-each-other
ce ert signification
this was signification
ancontre grant destrucion.
against great destruction
Escot en l'éve s'embatirent;
Scots into the-water themselves-plunged
par les èves s'en départirent.
through the waters themselves-thence scattered
Artus après aus se hasta,
Arthur after them himself hastened
chalans, batiax, nès apresta;
barges boats ships he-prepared
tant les asailli et garda,
so-much them he-assailed and watched
tos les destruit et afama,
all them he-destroyed and starved
à vingt, à cent, et à milliers
by twenty by hundred and by thousands
chaoient mort en ses sentiers.
fell dead in his paths
Diramaurus, uns rois irois,
Diramaurus a king Irish
qui valt aidier as Escocois,
who wished to-help to-the Scots

assés près d'Artus ariva
quite near of-Arthur arrived
et Artus contre lui ala.
and Arthur against him went
Al roi Irois se combati
With-the king Irish himself fought
asés esranment le vainqui;
quite quickly him vanquished
lui et sa gent en fist fuir
him and his folk thence he-made flee
et en Yrlande revertir,
and into Ireland return
puis est à l'estanc repairiés
then he-is to the-pool returned
là où il ot Escos laiés.
there where he had Scots left
Es vous evesques et abés,
Behold you bishops and abbots
moines et altres ordenés,
monks and others ordained
cors sains et reliques portans,
bodies holy and relics carrying
por les Escos merci criant.
for the Scots mercy crying
Es vous les dames des contrées,
Behold you the ladies of-the countries
totes nus piés, escavelées,
all bare feet disheveled
leurs vestéures descirées,
their garments torn

et leurs chières esgratinées,
and their faces scratched
en lor bras lor anfans petis,
in their arms their children little
à plorement et à grans cris.
with weeping and with great cries
As piés Artus tot s'umelient,
At-the feet (of-)Arthur all themselves-humble
plorent, braient et merci crient:
they-weep howl and mercy cry
sire merci, ce dient tuit,
lord mercy this say all
por que as cest païs destruit.
for what thou-hast this country destroyed
Aies merci des entrepris
Have mercy on-the trapped
que tu as de faim, sire, ocis.
whom thou hast of hunger lord killed
Se tu n' en as pité des pères,
If thou not thereof hast pity of-the fathers
voies ces enfans et ces mères,
see these children and these mothers
voies lor fils, voies lor filles,
see their sons see their daughters
voies la gent que tu escilles.
see the folk whom thou ruinest
Les pères rent as petis fils
The fathers render to-the little sons
et as dames rent lor maris:
and to-the ladies render their husbands

rent à ces dames lor signors
render to these ladies their lords
et lor frères rent as sorors,
and their brothers render to-the sisters
assés avons espenéi
plenty we-have atoned
que li Saisne passent par ci;
that the Saxons pass through here
n'est riens par nostre volenté
not-it-is anything by our will
qu'il ont par cest païs passé.
that-they have through this country passed
Ce poise nous que par nous passent,
This grieves us that through us they-pass
mult nous damagent, mult nous lassent;
much us they-harm much us they-weary
se nous les avons herbergiés
if we them have lodged
tant nous ont-il plus damagiés.
so-much us have-they more harmed
Noz chetex ont pris et mangiez
Our cattle they-have taken and eaten
et en lor terres anvoiez.
and to their lands sent
Nos n'avons qui nos desfendist,
We not-have who us might-defend
ne qui contre als nos garantist;
nor who against them us might-protect

et se nous les avons servis
and if we them have served
nous le fesimes à anuis.
we it did with griefs
La force est lor, nous sofrion,
The force is theirs we suffered
car nul socors n'atendion;
for any succor not-we-awaited
li Saisson estoient paien
the Saxons were pagans
et nos estions crestien;
and we were Christians
de tant nous ont-il plus grévés
by so-much us have-they more grieved
et plus laidement demenés.
and more foully handled
Mal nous ont fait, tu nous fais pis,
Ill us they-have done thou us dost worse
ce ne t'est mie honor, ne pris
this not to-thee-is at-all honor nor praise
d'ocire cels qui merci quoèrent,
of-killing those who mercy seek
qui par ces roces de faim moèrent.
who among these rocks of hunger die
De faim muerent et de mesaise
Of hunger they-die and of distress
rien n'ont fors ce que lor desplaise.
anything not-they-have except that which them displeases
Venqu nous'as, mais lai nous vivre,
Vanquished us-thou-hast but let us live

quel par que soit terre nous livre;
whatever part that be land us deliver
lai nous, se viax, vivre en servage,
let us if thou-wilt live in servitude
et nous et tot nostre linage.
both we and all our lineage
Aies merchi des Crestiens,
Have mercy on-the Christians
nous tenons la loi que tu tiens.
we hold the law which thou holdest
Crestienté ert abaissie,
Christendom will-be abased
se ceste terre est escillie;
if this land is ruined
et jà en est péris li plus.
and already thereof is perished the most
Artus fu mult bon el desus,
Arthur was very good in-the uppermost
de cel caistis pule ot pitié
of that wretched people he-had pity
et des cors sains et del clergié;
and of-the bodies holy and of-the clergy
vie et membre lor pardona,
life and limb to-them he-pardoned
lor homage prist, s'es laia.
their homage he-took so-them left
Hoël a l'estang esgardé
Hoel has the-pool looked-at
et sa gent en a apelé.
and his folk thereof has called

Mervilla' soi de la grandor
Marveled himself of the greatness
del lé et de le grant longor.
of-the breadth and of the great length
De tans illes se mervilla
Of so-many isles himself he-marveled
et de roces dont tant i a;
and of rocks whereof so-many there are
de tans aigles et de tans nis
of so-many eagles and of so-many nests
et de lor noises et de lor cris.
and of their noises and of their cries
Tot a à mervelle tenu
All he-has for marvel held
quanqu'il a iloques véu:
whatever-he has there seen
Hoël, ce dist Artus, biax niés,
Hoel this said Arthur fair nephew
de cest estang mervillies t'ies;
of this pool marveled thee-art
assés plus te mervilleras
plenty more thee thou-wilt-marvel
d'un altre estanc que tu verras.
of-an other pool which thou wilt-see
Près de ci, en ceste contrée.
Near to here in this country
La place où il siet est quarée,
The place where it sits is square
vint piés de lonc, et vint de lé,
twenty feet of length and twenty of breadth

et cinq piés de parfondeté:
and five feet of depth
èsangles de quatre cornières
in-the angles of four corners
a pissons de pluisors manières;
are fish of many kinds
jà cil qui en l'un angle sont
ever those which in the-one angle are
devers l'autre ne passeront.
toward the-other not will-pass
Et si n'i a nule devise,
And yet not-there is any division
ne desfense de nule guise
nor barrier of any sort
que l'on i puisse aparcevoir,
that one there can perceive
ne main santir, ne oil véoir.
nor hand feel nor eye see
Jo ne sai se hom l'engigna
I not know if man it-contrived
ou se nature le forma.
or if nature it formed
D'un altre estanc te redirai
Of-an other pool thee I-shall-tell-again
dont plus mervillé te ferai:
whereof more marveled thee I-shall-make
joste Saverne, en Gales siet
beside Severn in Wales it-sits
flos de mer montans iloc chiet,
flood of sea rising there falls

mais la mers tant ne montera,
but the sea so-much not will-rise
ne flos dedens tant ne carra
nor flood within so-much not will-fall
que jà soit nul oré tot plains
that ever it-be any time all full
ou flot mult plus, ou il mult mains;
or flood much more or it much less
jà al flot ne sorondera,
ever at-the flood not it-will-overflow
ne ses rives ne coverra.
nor its banks not will-cover
Mais quant cele mer se retrait
But when that sea itself withdraws
et li flot arrière revait,
and the flood back goes-again
dont veriés l'eve lever,
then you-would-see the-water rise
rives covrir et soronder,
banks cover and overflow
et grans ondes en halt voler
and great waves on high fly
et chans moillier et aroser;
and fields wet and water
se home i a del païs né
if man there is of-the country born
qui véir l'aut le vis torné,
who to-see it-goes the face turned

l'ève sempré vole si halt
the-water straightway flies so high
que sor ses dras et sor lui salt:
that upon his clothes and upon him it-leaps
jà ne sera de tel poéir
ever not he-will-be of such power
qu'il ne l'estuise jus caoir.
that-he not him-behoove down fall
Maint en a issi trébuchié
Many-a-one of-them it-has thus tripped
et maint retenu et noié.
and many-a-one held and drowned
Se home i vient le dos avant,
If man there comes the back foremost
les talons tornés, reculant,
the heels turned backing
sor la rive puet demorer
on the bank he-can stay
et tant com il puet sojorner;
and as-long as he can sojourn
jà par l'ève n'iert moilliés,
ever by the-water not-be-will-be wetted
ne adesés, ne atouciés.
nor touched nor reached
Hoël forment se mervilla
Hoel greatly himself marveled
de ce que li rois li conta.
of that which the king to-him told

Dont fist Artus ses cors corner
Then made Arthur his horns sound
grailles et buisines soner,
trumpets and clarions sound
ce fu signes de retorner.
this was sign of returning
A sa gent fist congié doner
To his folk he-made leave give
de repairier à lor maisons,
of returning to their houses
ne mais à ses privés barons,
not but to his intimate barons
cil s'en tornèrent tot joiant
those themselves-thence turned all joyful
del roi s'am partirent à tant.
from-the king themselves-thence parted at that
Onques ce dient en Bretaigne
Ever this they-say in Britain
n'ot mais si vaillant cavetaigne.
not-was more so valiant captain

The Round Table, Norway, and Gaul

VI

At York Arthur restores the churches, makes Pyram archbishop, gives Moray to Urien, Scotland to Aguisel, and Lothian to Lot, and marries Guinevere, who has no child by him. He conquers Ireland and Iceland, the kings of Orkney, Gotland, and Guenelande come to him with tribute, and peace follows. His courtliness draws knights from every land; he makes the Round Table so that no baron may boast a higher seat, and Wace warns that the tales told of him have turned to fable. He takes Norway for Lot from Riduf, with Gawain; Denmark yields; he takes Flanders and Boulogne, routs Frollo, Rome's warden of Gaul, besieges him in Paris, and kills him in single combat on the island. Hoel wins Poitou and Gascony, and Arthur, holding France nine years, gives Anjou to Kay and Normandy to Bedivere.

Artus à Euroïc torna,
Arthur to York turned
jusqu'à Noël i sojorna;
until-to Christmas there sojourned
le jor de la nativité
the day of the Nativity
a yloc à la feste esté.
he-has there at the feast been
La cité vit mult apovrie
The city he-saw much impoverished
et empirie et afoiblie:
and worsened and weakened
mult vit iglises désertées
many he-saw churches deserted
maisons caoites et gastées.
houses fallen and wasted

Pyram, un sage capelain
Pyram a wise chaplain
qui ne l'ot pas servi en vain,
who not him-had at-all served in vain
fist de l'arcevesquié saisir
he-made of the-archbishopric take-possession
por les iglises maintenir,
for the churches to-maintain
et por les mostiers restorer
and for the minsters to-restore
que paien orent fait gaster.
which pagans had made waste
Puis fist li rois partot crier
Then made the king everywhere cry
que la gent aille laborer.
that the folk go to-labor
Les frans hommes désiretés
The free men disinherited
a de tot le raine mandés:
he-has from all the realm summoned
lor iretés lor a rendues
their heritages to-them he-has rendered
fiés donés et rentes créues.
fiefs given and rents increased
Trois frères de mult frant lignage
Three brothers of very free lineage
i avoit et de halt parage,
there were and of high parentage
Lot, Aguisel et Urien,
Lot Aguisel and Urien

emparenté estoient bien.
kinned they-were well
Lor ancissor orent tenu
Their ancestors had held
et il après, tant com pais fu,
and they after as-long as peace was
la tère dès le Humbre en nort,
the land from the Humber to north
par droit sans faire à altrui tort.
by right without doing to another wrong
Artus lor a lor fiés randus
Arthur to-them has their fiefs rendered
et lor éritages créus.
and their heritages increased
A Urien, el premier cief,
To Urien in-the first head
randi Murain, sans relief,
he-rendered Moray without relief
et sans loier qu'il en éust
and without payment that-he for-it had
li comanda que rois en fust.
him commanded that king thereof he-be
Rois estoit clamés à cel tens
King was called at that time
cil qui sire ert de Murefens.
that-one who lord was of Moray
Escoce a à Guisel donée
Scotland he-has to Aguisel given
et il l'avoit en fiu clamée.
and he it-had in fief claimed

A Lot qui avoit sa soror
To Lot who had his sister
et tenue l'avoit maint jor,
and held her-had many-a day
randi li rois tot Loënois
rendered the king all Lothian
et dona altre fiex en crois;
and gave other fiefs in increase
encor estoit Gavains ses fils
still was Gawain his son
jovenes, damisiax et petis.
young squire and small
Quant Artus ot sa terre asise,
When Arthur had his land settled
et par tot ot bone justice,
and through all had good justice
et tot son raine ot restoré
and all his realm had restored
en l'anciene disinité,
to the-ancient dignity
Genièvre prist, s'in fist roïne,
Guinevere he-took so-of-her made queen
une jouène noble mescine.
a young noble maiden
Bele estoit et cortoise et gente
Fair she-was and courtly and noble
et as nobles Romains parente;
and to-the noble Romans kin

Cador la nori longement
Cador her nurtured long
en Cornuaille riquement,
in Cornwall richly
come sa cosine procaine,
as his cousin near
et sa mère ot esté romaine.
and her mother had been Roman
Mult fu de grant afaitement
Very she-was of great refinement
et de noble contenement;
and of noble bearing
mult fu large et bele parlière;
very she-was generous and fair speaker
Artur l'ama mult et ot chière,
Arthur her-loved much and had dear
mais entr'ax deus n'orent nul oir,
but between-them two not-they-had any heir
ne ne porent anfant avoir.
nor not could child have
Artus, quant iver fu passés,
Arthur when winter was passed
et od le caut revint estés,
and with the heat returned summer
que mer fu bele à navier
that sea was fair for sailing
fist sa navie aparillier.
made his fleet make-ready

En Irlande ce dist iroit
Into Ireland this he-said he-would-go
et cele terre conquerroit.
and that land would-conquer
N'i fist mie Artus longe atente,
Not-there made at-all Arthur long wait
mander fist sa millor jovente,
summon he-made his best youth
et cels qui plus porent de guerre,
and those who most could of war
rices et povres de sa terre.
rich and poor of his land
Quant passé furent en Irlande,
When crossed they-were into Ireland
par la terre prisent viande:
through the land they-took victuals
assés prisent vaces et boes
plenty they-took cows and oxen
et quanques à manger ert oës
and whatever for eating was needful
Gillamor, li rois de la terre
Gillamor the king of the land
oït qu'Artus ert alés querre:
heard that-Arthur was gone to-seek
oït les noises, les novèles
heard the noises the news
et les plaintes et les karèles
and the complaints and the quarrels
que faisoient li vilenaille,
which made the peasantry

qui perdue orent lor almaille;
who lost had their cattle
combatre s'ala contre Artur,
to-fight himself-went against Arthur
mais ne l' fist mie à bon éur,
but not it did at-all at good fortune
car si home furent trop nu;
for his men were too bare
n'orent hauberc, n'elme, n'escu,
not-they-had hauberk nor-helm nor-shield
ne sajete ne connissoient,
nor arrow not they-knew
ne de traire rien ne savoient.
nor of shooting anything not knew
Et li Breton qui ars avoient,
And the Britons who bows had
espessement à als traioient;
thickly at them shot
n'osoient lor els descovrir
not-they-dared their eyes uncover
n'il ne savoient où tapir.
nor-they not knew where to-hide
Mult les véissiés gondillier
Much them you-might-see wriggle
et l'un en droit l'altre muchier:
and the-one in lee-of the-other hide
tornent as bois et as buissons
they-turn to-the woods and to-the bushes
et as viles et as maisons;
and to-the towns and to-the houses

de lor vies quièrent respit,
of their lives they-seek respite
mais venqu sunt et desconfit.
but vanquished they-are and routed
Li rois valt à un bos fuir
The king wished to a wood to-flee
mais atains fu, ne pout garir;
but overtaken he-was not could escape
Artus l'encauça tant et quist
Arthur him-chased so-much and sought
qu'il l'a consiut et qu'il le prist.
that-he him-has overtaken and that-he him took
Mais cil fist à Artur omage
But that-one did to Arthur homage
et tint de lui son eritage:
and held of him his heritage
avenanment dona ostage
fittingly he-gave hostage
de rendre par an tréuage.
of rendering by year tribute
Quant Artus a conquis Irlande,
When Arthur has conquered Ireland
trespassés est dusqu'en Islande:
crossed he-is as-far-as-into Iceland
la tère prist tote et conquist
the land he-took all and conquered
et les homes à soi sosmist,
and the men to himself subjected
par tot valt avoir signorie.
through all he-wished to-have lordship

Gonvals qui ert rois d'Orquenie
Gonvals who was king of-Orkney
et Doldamer rois de Gollande,
and Doldamer king of Gotland
et Romarec de Guenelande
and Romarec of Guenelande
orent tost la novele oïe
had soon the news heard
et cascuns i avoit ses pie,
and each there had his spy
quar Artus sor als passeroit
that Arthur upon them would-cross
et tote lor terre prandroit.
and all their land would-take
N'avoit al mont d'arme son per
Not-he-had in-the world of-arms his peer
et qui tel gent péust mander.
and who such folk could summon
Por paor que sor als n'alast
For fear that upon them not-he-should-go
et que lor terre ne gastast,
and that their land not he-should-waste
sans esforcement, de lor gré
without compulsion of their will
sont en Irlande à lui alé.
they-are into Ireland to him gone
De lor avoir tant i portèrent
Of their wealth so-much there they-carried
et i pramisent et donèrent,
and there promised and gave

pais firent, si home devindrent;
peace they-made his men they-became
lor eritage de lui tindrent,
their heritage of him they-held
tréu ont pramis et voë
tribute they-have promised and vowed
ostage en a cascuns doné.
hostage thereof has each given
Partant sunt tuit à pais remès,
Thereby are all in peace remained
et Artus revint à ses nès;
and Arthur came-back to his ships
en Engletere est revenus,
into England he-is returned
à grant joie fu recéus.
with great joy he-was received
Trente ans puis cel repairement
Thirty years after that return
et deus raina paisiblement,
and two he-reigned peacefully
que nus guerroier ne l'osa,
that anyone war-on not him-dared
ne il autrui ne guerroia;
nor he another not warred-on
et prist si grant afaitement
and he-took so great refinement
por soi, sans nul ensagnement,
for himself without any instruction
et se contint si noblement,
and himself bore so nobly

si bel et si paisiblement,
so fair and so peaceably
n'estoit parole de çors d'ome,
not-was talk of court of-man
nis de l'emperéor de Rome,
not-even of the-emperor of Rome
n'ooit parler de chevalier
not-be-heard speak of knight
qui auques féist à proisier,
who aught did to praise
qui de sa maisnie ne fust,
who of his household not were
por oc qu'il avoir le péust,
for this that-he have him could
se por avoir servir volsist,
if for wealth to-serve he-would
que rois Artus ne l' retenist.
that king Arthur not him retained
Por les nobles barons qu'il ot
For the noble barons that-he had
dont cascuns mieldre estre quidot;
whereof each better be thought
cascuns s'en tenoit al millor,
each himself-thereof held for-the best
ne nus n'en savoit le pior,
nor anyone not-thereof knew the worst
fist Artus la Roonde Table
made Arthur the Round Table
dont Breton dient mainte fable:
whereof Britons tell many-a tale

iloc séoient li vassal
there sat the vassals
tot chievalment et tot ingal;
all as-chiefs and all equal
à la table ingalment séoient
at the table equally they-sat
et ingalment servi estoient.
and equally served were
Nus d'als ne se pooient vanter
Anyone of-them not themselves could boast
qu'il séist plus halt de son per;
that-he sat more high than his peer
tuit estoient assis moiain,
all were seated in-the-middle
ne n'i avoit nul de forain.
nor not-there was anyone of outside
N'estoit pas tenus por cortois,
Not-was at-all held for courteous
Escos, ne Bertons, ne François,
Scot nor Breton nor Frenchman
Normant, Angevin, ne Flamenc,
Norman Angevin nor Fleming
ne Borgignon, ne Loherenc,
nor Burgundian nor Lorrainer
de qui que il tenist son feu
of whom that he held his fief
des ocidant dusqu'à Mont Geu,
from-the west as-far-as Mont Joux
qui à la cort le roi n'alast,
who to the court (of-)the king not-went

et qui od lui n'i sojornast,
and who with him not-there sojourned
et qui n'avoient vestéure
and who not-had clothing
et contenance et arméure,
and bearing and armor
à la guise que cil estoient
in the fashion that those were
qui en la cort Artur servoient.
who in the court (of-)Arthur served
De pluisors terres i venoient
From many lands there came
cil qui pris et honor querroient.
those who praise and honor sought
Tant por oïr ses cortesies,
As-much for to-hear his courtesies
tant por véir ses mananties,
as-much for to-see his riches
tant por conoistre ses barons,
as-much for to-know his barons
tant por aveir ses rices dons.
as-much for to-have his rich gifts
Des povres homes ert amés
By-the poor men he-was loved
et des rices mult honorés.
and by-the rich much honored
Mais tot altre roi l'envioient,
But all other kings him-envied

car il dotoient et cremoient
for they doubted and feared
que tot le monde conquéist
that all the world he-might-conquer
et que lor terre lor tolist.
and that their land from-them he-might-take
En cele grant pais que jo di,
In that great peace which I tell
ne sai se vos l'avés oï,
not I-know if you it-have heard
furent les mervelles provées
were the marvels proved
et les aventures trovées
and the adventures found
qui d'Artu sont tant racontées
which of-Arthur are so-much recounted
que à fable sunt atornées:
that into fable they-are turned
ne tot mençonge ne tot voir
neither all lie nor all true
tot folie, ne tot savoir;
all folly nor all wisdom
tant ont li contéor conté
so-much have the storytellers told
et li fabléor tant fablé
and the fablers so-much fabled
pour lor contes ambeleter,
for their tales to-embellish
que tout ont feit fables sanbler.
that all they-have made fables seem

Par la bonté de son corage
By the goodness of his heart
et par le los de son barnage,
and by the praise of his baronage
et par la grant chevalerie
and by the great chivalry
qu'il ot afaitie et norrie,
which-he had trained and nurtured
dist Artus que mer passeroit
said Arthur that sea he-would-cross
et tote France conquerroit,
and all France would-conquer
mais primes en Norguinge iroit,
but first into Norway he-would-go
Lot son serorge roi feroit;
Lot his brother-in-law king would-make
Sicelins li rois mors estoit
Sicelin the king dead was
que fil ne fille n'en avoit.
who son nor daughter not-thereof had
A son moriant ot rové,
At his dying he-had asked
quant il estoit en sa santé,
when he was in his health
que Lot de Norguege rois fust,
that Lot of Norway king be
son fiu et son roiame éust;
his fief and his realm have
ses niés estoit, n'avoit altre oir,
his nephew he-was not-he-had other heir

Lot devoit tot par droit avoir,
Lot ought all by right have
quant Sicelins Lot establi
since Sicelin Lot established
et il quida qu'il fust issi.
and he thought that-it were so
Li Norois tinrent à folie
The Norwegians held for folly
et son commant et s'establie;
both his command and his-ordinance
quant il virent le roi finé
when they saw the king ended
à Lot ont le raine véé;
to Lot they-have the realm denied
n'i valrent estrange ome atraire,
not-there they-wished foreign man to-bring-in
ne d'estrange ome lor oir faire,
nor of-foreign man their heir to-make
ains seroient tot viel quenu
rather they-would-be all old hoary
que il l'éussent connéu;
than they him-had acknowledged
à cels d'autre tere donroit
to those of-other land he-would-give
ce qu'il à aus doner devoit.
that which-he to them give ought
Roi feront d'un de lor noris
King they-will-make of-one of their nurslings
qui amera aus et lor fis:
who will-love them and their sons

issi ont, por ceste oquoison,
thus they-have for this occasion
Riduf fait roi un de lor baron.
Riduf made king one of their barons
Quant Lot vit que son droit perdroit,
When Lot saw that his right he-would-lose
se par force ne l' conqueroit,
if by force not it he-conquered
Artur son signor a requis
Arthur his lord he-has asked
et Artus li a bien pramis
and Arthur to-him has well promised
que tot le raine lui rendra,
that all the realm to-him he-will-render
et que Reduf mar le bailla.
and that Riduf ill it seized
Grant navie et grant gent manda,
Great fleet and great folk he-summoned
dedens Norguege à force entra:
into Norway by force he-entered
mult a destruites les contrées,
much he-has destroyed the countries
maisons prises, viles robées.
houses taken towns robbed
Riduf ne daigna pas fuir,
Riduf not deigned at-all to-flee
ne le païs ne vaut guerpir;
nor the country not wished to-forsake
d'Artus desfandre se cuida,
from-Arthur to-defend himself he-thought

la gent de Norvange aüna.
the folk of Norway he-gathered
Mais poi ot gent, et poi amis,
But little he-had folk and few friends
venqus fu Riduf et ocis.
vanquished was Riduf and killed
Des autres i ot ocis tant
Of-the others there were killed so-many
petit i ot del remanant;
little there was of-the remnant
issi furent destruis Norois
thus were destroyed Norwegians
par Loth le roi de Loenois.
by Lot the king of Lothian
Quant Norgège fut délivrée,
When Norway was delivered
à Lot l'a tote Artus donée,
to Lot it-has all Arthur given
mais que Lot d'Artur la tendroit
provided that Lot of-Arthur it would-hold
et à signor le connistroit.
and for lord him would-acknowledge
De saint Suplice l'Apostore,
From Saint Sulpicius the-Pope
la qui ame ait repos et glore!
the whose soul may-have rest and glory
Ert Gawains novelement venus,
Was Gawain newly come
chevaliers prous et connéus;
knight valiant and renowned

armes li avoit cil donées,
arms to-him had that-one given
mult i furent bien aloées.
much there they-were well bestowed
Prous fu et de mult grant mesure,
Valiant he-was and of very great measure
d'orgoil et de forfait n'ot qure;
of-pride and of misdeed not-he-had care
plus vaut faire que il ne dist
more he-wished to-do than he not said
et plus doner qu'il ne pramist.
and more to-give than-he not promised
A Rome l'ot fait envoier
To Rome him-had made send
ses pères, por lui enseigner;
his father for him to-instruct
et com Wavains fu adoubés,
and when Gawain was dubbed
au roi Artus s'en est alés.
to-the king Arthur himself-thence is gone
Pour lui servir et hounourer,
For him to-serve and honor
mult se pêna d'armes porter.
much himself he-strove of-arms bearing
Quant Artus ot Norgège prise
When Arthur had Norway taken
et il l'ot bien en sa justise;
and he it-had well in his rule

les vaillans homes, les millors
the valiant men the best
et les millors combatéors,
and the best fighters
fist tos eslire et aüner,
he-made all choose and gather
et nés et barges amener
and ships and barges bring
od l'autre pueple qu'il menot.
with the-other people that-he led
Quant bel tens vit et bon vent ot,
When fair weather he-saw and good wind had
en Danemarce trespassa,
into Denmark he-crossed
la tere à son oès covoita.
the land for his use coveted
Acil, qui rois ert des Danois,
Achil who king was of-the Danes
vit les Bretons, vit les Norois,
saw the Britons saw the Norwegians
vit Artur qui tot conqueroit,
saw Arthur who all conquered
vit que tenir ne se poroit.
saw that hold not himself he-could
Ne se valt laier damagier,
Not himself he-wished to-let harm
ne sa bone tère empirier;
nor his good land worsen
s'onor, ne son argent despendre,
his-honor nor his silver spend

sa gent ocire, ses tors prendre.
his folk kill his towers take
Tant fist, tant dist et porcaça,
So-much he-did so-much said and contrived
et tant pramist et tant dona,
and so-much promised and so-much gave
et tant requist, et tant proia,
and so-much asked and so-much prayed
al roi Artur se concorda:
with-the king Arthur himself reconciled
féuté fist, ses hom devint
fealty he-made his man became
et del roi Artur son fie tint.
and of-the king Arthur his fief held
Artus fu lies del grant esploit
Arthur was glad of-the great exploit
et del despens que il faisoit;
and of-the spending that he made
ne li pot pas encor sosfire,
not him could at-all yet suffice
de Danemarce fist ellire
from Denmark he-made choose
bons chevalier et bons archiers,
good knights and good archers
ne sai qans cent, et qans milliers;
not I-know how-many hundred and how-many thousands
mener les valt à soi en France,
to-lead them he-wished with himself into France
et il si fist sans demorance.
and he so did without delay

Viles, cités et castiax prist;
Towns cities and castles he-took
Flandres et Bologne conquist.
Flanders and Boulogne he-conquered
Sagement fist sa gent conduire,
Wisely he-made his folk be-led
ne valt pas les tères destruire,
not he-wished at-all the lands to-destroy
viles ardoir et robe prandre,
towns to-burn and goods to-take
tot fist véer et tot desfandre,
all he-made forbid and all prohibit
robes et viandes et provende.
goods and victuals and provender
Se l'on i trove qui la vende
If one there finds who it sell
à bons déniers soit acatée,
for good pennies it-let-be bought
ne soit destruite, ne robée.
not be-it destroyed nor robbed
Gaulle avoit nom France, cel jor,
Gaul had name France that day
si n'i avoit roi, ne signor;
so not-there was king nor lord
Romain en demaine l'avoient,
Romans in demesne it-had
et en demaine la tenoient.
and in demesne it held
En garde ert à Frolle livrée,
In keeping it-was to Frollo delivered

et il l'avoit lonc tans gardée.
and he it-had long time kept
Treu et rente recevoit,
Tribute and rent he-received
et par terme le trametoit.
and by term it sent
A Rome, à lor emperéour.
To Rome to their emperor
Ce fu del tans l'emperéour
This was of-the time of-the-emperor
César le fort conquerour
Caesar the strong conqueror
qui conquist France et Alemaigne,
who conquered France and Germany
et si conquist tote Bretaigne.
and so conquered all Britain
Frolles fu mult de grant valor;
Frollo was very of great valor
des nobles homes ert de Rome,
of-the noble men he-was of Rome
ne duta por son cors nul home.
not he-feared for his body any man
Frolles sot, par pluisors messages,
Frollo knew by many messages
les saisines et les damages
the seizures and the damages
que Artur et sa gent faisoit,
which Arthur and his folk made
qui as Romains lor droit toloient.
who from-the Romans their right took

Toz les homes armes portanz,
All the men arms bearing
el fié de Rome apartenanz
in-the fief of Rome belonging
dont il cuidoit avoir aïe,
whereof he thought to-have aid
et qui erent an sa baillie
and who were in his jurisdiction
fist toz semondre et toz venir,
he-made all summon and all come
et toz armer et bien garnir.
and all arm and well equip
A bataille ala contre Artur,
To battle he-went against Arthur
mel ne l' fist mie à bon éur:
but not it did at-all at good fortune
desconfiz fu, si s'anfoï,
routed he-was so himself-fled
de ses homes maint i perdi;
of his men many-a-one there he-lost
que ocis, que navrez, que pris,
as-well killed as wounded as taken
que retornéz an lor païs,
as returned to their country
en ot perdu plus de deux mile
of-them he-had lost more than two thousand
que gent i ot de mainte vile.
for folk there were of many-a town
Ne ce pas mervoille n'estoit,
Nor this at-all marvel not-was

car Artus trop grant gent avoit;
for Arthur too great folk had
car ès tères qu'il ot conquises,
for in-the lands which-he had conquered
et ès citez qu'il ot prises
and in-the cities which-he had taken
n'i en ot il qu'il poist lessier,
not-there thereof was it that-he could leave
home à pié, ne bon chevalier
man on foot nor good knight
qui de conbatre aäïge éust,
who for fighting age had
ne qui conbatre se péust,
nor who fight himself could
qu'il n'an éust o soi mené,
that-he not-thereof had with himself led
ou qu'il n'an éust puis mandé.
or that-he not-thereof had after summoned
Mult ot gent estrange mandée,
Much he-had folk foreign summoned
estre sa maisnie privée,
besides his household private
qui ert de chevaliers oséz
which was of knights bold
et de combatéours privez.
and of fighters intimate
Li François à lui se tornoient,
The French to him themselves turned
cil qui pooient et osoient,
those who could and dared

tant por son sagemant parler,
as-much for his wisely speaking
tant por son largemant doner;
as-much for his generously giving
tant por la noblesce de lui,
as-much for the nobleness of him
tant por paor, tant por refui,
as-much for fear as-much for refuge
à lui aloient, pès feisoient
to him they-went peace made
lor fiez de lui reconuissoient.
their fiefs of him acknowledged
Frolles de la desconfiture
Frollo from the rout
vint à Paris, grant aléure,
came to Paris great pace
ne s'osa aillors arester,
not himself-dared elsewhere stop
ne ne se sot aillors fier.
nor not himself knew elsewhere trust
Recet desfanssable querroit,
Refuge defensible he-sought
car Artus et sa gent cremoit;
for Arthur and his folk he-feared
à Paris fist la garnison
to Paris he-made the provisions
porter des viles anviron.
carry from-the towns around

A Paris Artus atendra
At Paris Arthur he-will-await
et contre lui se combatra;
and against him himself will-fight
tant de la gent qui ert fuitive
as-much of the folk who was fugitive
que de celi qui ert naïve,
as of that which was native
mult fu d'omes li cité[s] plaine.
very was of-men the city full
Cascuns en son endroit se paine
Each in his place himself strives
de blé et de viande atraire,
of grain and of victuals to-gather
des murs et des portes refaire.
of-the walls and of-the gates to-remake
Artus sot que Frolle faisoit,
Arthur knew what Frollo did
qui à Paris se garnissoit.
who at Paris himself fortified
A Paris vint, si l'aseja,
To Paris he-came so it-besieged
el borc entor se herberja;
in-the borough around himself lodged
l'eve et la terre fist garder
the-water and the land he-made guard
que viande n'i pot entrer.
that victuals not-there could enter

La vile tinrent li François
The town held the French
et Artus i sist plus d'un mois.
and Arthur there sat more than-a month
Grant pule avoit en la cité,
Great people there-was in the city
et de viande poverté;
and of victuals poverty
tot le porcas et tot l'atrait,
all the store and all the-supply
qu'en poi de tans avoient fait,
which-in little of time they-had made
orent tot mangié et usé,
they-had all eaten and used
après furent tost afamé:
after they-were soon starved
poi ont vitaille, grant gent ont,
little they-have victuals great folk they-have
enfant et feme grant dol font.
children and women great grief make
Se la gent povre fust créue,
If the folk poor were believed
la cité fust bientost rendue:
the city were soon rendered
diva, font-il, Frolles que fais?
come-now say-they Frollo what dost-thou
Porquoi ne quiers à Artur pais?
Why not seekest-thou of Arthur peace

Frolles vit le pule destroit
Frollo saw the people distressed
por la vitaille qui faloit;
for the victuals which failed
voit la gent qui de faim moroient
sees the folk who of hunger were-dying
et vit que rendre se voloient;
and saw that to-surrender themselves they-wished
vit que torné sunt à essil,
saw that turned they-are to ruin
mius velt son cors metre en péril
better he-wishes his body to-put in peril
et en abandon de morir
and in hazard of dying
que plainement Paris guerpir.
than plainly Paris to-forsake
Bien se fioit en sa bonté;
Well himself he-trusted in his goodness
al roi Artur a fors mandé
to-the king Arthur he-has out sent-word
que il dui en l'ille venissent,
that they two into the-isle should-come
et cors à cors si combatissent.
and body to body so should-fight
Et cil d'aus qui l'autre ociroit
And that-one of-them who the-other would-kill
et qui vif vaincre le poroit,
and who alive conquer him could

la tère tote quite éust
the land all free should-have
et tote France recéust,
and all France receive
si que li tère ne périst,
so that the land not perish
ne li tère ne destruisist.
nor the land not be-destroyed
Artus oï le mandement
Arthur heard the message
qui mult li vint bien à talent;
which much to-him came well to liking
la bataille ont por als deux prise,
the battle they-have for them two taken
ensi com Frolles l'a requise.
thus as Frollo it-has asked
Ensi furent doné li gage
Thus were given the pledges
et orent des deux pars ostage,
and they-had of-the two sides hostage
cil de l'ost et cil de Paris,
those of the-host and those of Paris
des convenans qu'il orent pris.
of-the covenants which-they had taken
Es vous les deux vassax armés
Behold you the two vassals armed
et dedens l'ille el pré entrés.
and within the-isle into-the meadow entered
Dont véissiés pule fremir,
Then you-might-see people tremble

homes et femes fors issir,
men and women out go
saillir sor mur et sor maisons,
leap upon wall and upon houses
et réclamer Deu et ses nons,
and invoke God and his names
que cil venque qui pais lor tiègne
that that-one conquer who peace to-them keep
si que mais guerre ne lor viegne.
so that more war not to-them come
La gent Artus de l'autre part
The folk (of-)Arthur on the-other side
sont en escout et en esgart;
are in listening and in watching
et deproient al roi de glore
and pray to-the king of glory
qu'il doint à lor signor victore.
that-he give to their lord victory
Qui dons véist les deux vassalx
Who then had-seen the two vassals
armés séir sor lor cevax?
armed sit upon their horses
Les cevax isniax por saillir,
The horses swift for leaping
escus lever, hantes brandir.
shields raise shafts brandish
N'ert mie légier à savoir,
Not-it-was at-all easy to know

por esgarder et por véoir
for watching and for seeing
qui plus fors ert et qui vaincroit,
who more strong was and who would-conquer
quar cascuns bons vassax estoit.
for each good vassal was
Quant il furent aparillié
When they were prepared
des deux pars se sont eslongié,
from-the two sides themselves are distanced
esperonant, resnes lasquies,
spurring reins slackened
escus levés, lances baissies.
shields raised lances lowered
Se sont alé entreférir
Themselves are gone to-strike-each-other
andui, de mervillos aïr.
both with marvelous fury
Mais Frolles al férir failli,
But Frollo at-the striking failed
ne sai se ses cevax guenci;
not I-know if his horse swerved
et Artus a Frolle féru
and Arthur has Frollo struck
desor la bocle de l'escu;
upon the boss of the-shield
de son ceval l'a loing porté
from his horse him-he-has far carried
tant com anste li a duré;
as-far as shaft to-him has lasted

droit à lui vint et trait l'espée.
straight to him he-came and drew the-sword
Jà fust li bataille finée,
Already were the battle ended
quant Frolles sor ses piés sailli,
when Frollo onto his feet leapt
contre Artur sa lance estendi,
toward Arthur his lance he-stretched
son cheval ens el pis féri,
his horse in in-the breast he-struck
sa lance el cors li embati;
his lance in-the body to-him he-thrust
le ceval et le chevalier
the horse and the knight
fist tot ensamble trébuchier.
he-made all together tumble
Dont véissiez gens estormir
Then you-might-see folk stir
Bretons crier, armes saisir;
Britons cry arms seize
la trive éussent violée
the truce they-would-have violated
et l'ève et l'ille trespassée,
and the-water and the-isle crossed
et tuit fuissent al capléis,
and all would-have-been at-the fray
quant Artus dist: Estés en pais,
when Arthur said Be in peace
por moi ne vous mouvés huimais.
for me not you move henceforth

Callibourc traist l'espée nue,
Caliburn he-drew the-sword bare
à Frolle sera cher vendue.
to Frollo it-will-be dear sold
Leva l'escu, le cief covri,
He-raised the-shield the head covered
Frolle à l'espée recoilli.
Frollo with the-sword met
Frolles fu mult pros et hardis
Frollo was very valiant and bold
et ne fu lens, ne esbais;
and not was slow nor dismayed
l'espée leva contremont,
the-sword he-raised upward
Artur féri enmi le front.
Arthur he-struck amid the forehead
Frolles fu fors et li cols grans
Frollo was strong and the blow great
et li brans fu durs et trançans;
and the blade was hard and cutting
le hiaume qassa et fendi,
the helm he-broke and split
le hauberc faussa et rompi;
the hauberk he-pierced and broke
enmi le front Artur navra,
amid the forehead Arthur he-wounded
le sanc el vis li avala.
the blood onto-the face to-him ran-down

Quant Artus se senti navré
When Arthur himself felt wounded
et il se vit ensanglenté,
and he himself saw bloodied
de mal talent noirci et tainst,
with ill temper he-blackened and paled
passa avant et ne se fainst:
passed forward and not himself held-back
Calabrun a s'espée, el puing
Caliburn he-has his-sword in-the fist
qu'il a portée à maint besuing,
which-he has carried at many-a need
Frolle a en son le cief féru
Frollo he-has on top the head struck
dusqu'as espaulles l'a fendu,
as-far-as-the shoulders him-he-has split
trait et empoint, et il caï,
he-draws and thrusts and he fell
sanc et chervele en espandi.
blood and brain thence spilled
Onques hiaumes n'i ot mestier,
Ever helm not-there had use
ne li haubers que il ot chier:
nor the hauberk which he had dear
un poi des piés escaucira,
a little with-the feet he-kicked
iloc morut et dévia.
there he-died and departed
Cil de a vile et de l'ost crient,
Those of the town and of the-host cry

li un plorent, li autre rient:
the ones weep the others laugh
li citéian por Frolle plorent,
the citizens for Frollo weep
et nonporqant as portes corent;
and nevertheless to-the gates run
Artur ont recéu dedans
Arthur they-have received within
et ses maisnies et ses gans.
and his households and his folk
Dont véissiés Franchais venir
Then you-might-see French come
et les homages poroffrir;
and the homages offer
et Artus reçut lor omages
and Arthur received their homages
et de pais tenir prist ostages.
and of peace keeping took hostages
A Paris alques sojorna,
At Paris somewhat he-sojourned
baillius assist et ordena:
bailiffs he-set and ordained
s'ost establi en deus parties
his-host he-established in two parts
et devisa deus compaignies.
and divided two companies

A Hoel son nevou livra
To Hoel his nephew he-delivered
l'une moitié, si li rova
the-one half so him asked
que od cels conquist Anjou,
that with those he-conquer Anjou
Auvergne et Gascogne et Poitou;
Auvergne and Gascony and Poitou
et il Borgogne conquerroit
and he Burgundy would-conquer
et Loheraine, s'il pooit;
and Lorraine if-he could
Hoel fist son commandement
Hoel did his command
solonc son établissement.
according-to his ordinance
Berri conquist, et puis Toroigne,
Berry he-conquered and then Touraine
Auvergne, Poitou et Gascogne.
Auvergne Poitou and Gascony
Guitart, qui fu rois de Poiters,
Guitart who was king of Poitiers
fu prous, si ot bons chevaliers;
was valiant so had good knights
por tenir sa tere et ses drois,
for to-hold his land and his rights
se combati par pluisors fois.
himself fought by many times
Sovent caça, sovent fui,
Often he-chased often fled

sovent conquist, sovent perdi.
often conquered often lost
A la parfin vit que perdoit
At the end he-saw that he-was-losing
et q'à paine recoverroit,
and that-with pain he-would-recover
pais fist et acorde à Hoel;
peace he-made and accord with Hoel
car fors de borc et de castel,
for except of borough and of castle
n'i ot remés rien à gaster,
not-there was remained anything to waste
ne cep de vigne à estreper.
nor stock of vine to uproot
A Artu jura féuté,
To Arthur he-swore fealty
et Artus l'a puis mult amé.
and Arthur him-has afterward much loved
Les autres parties de France
The other parts of France
conquist Artus, par sa puiçance.
conquered Arthur by his power
Quant il ot tote à pais la terre,
When he had all in peace the land
que de nului ne li sort guerre,
that from anyone not to-him arises war
as viés homes qui orent fenes,
to-the old men who had wives
qui estoient loins de lor rènes,
who were far from their realms

randi lor dons et lor soldées,
he-rendered their gifts and their wages
si's envoia en lor contrées.
so-them he-sent into their countries
Les chevaliers et la jovente
The knights and the youth
qui de conquerre orent entente,
who of conquering had intent
qui n'orent femes, ne enfans,
who not-had wives nor children
retint Artus à soi neuf ans.
retained Arthur with himself nine years
Ès neuf ans que il France tint,
In-the nine years that he France held
mainte mervelle li avint,
many-a marvel to-him befell
maint orgillos home donta
many-a proud man he-tamed
et maint félon amesura.
and many-a felon he-moderated
A une Pasques à Paris
At an Easter at Paris
tint grant feste de ses amis;
he-held great feast of his friends
à ses homes randi lor pertes
to his men he-rendered their losses
et guere dona lor desertes;
and reward he-gave their deserts

son service cascuns randi
his service each he-repaid
selonc ce qu'il l'avoit servi.
according-to that which-he him-had served
A Kex son maistre senescal,
To Kay his master seneschal
un chevalier prou et loial,
a knight valiant and loyal
dona tot Angeu et Angiers
he-gave all Anjou and Angers
et cil la reçut volentiers.
and that-one it received willingly
A Beduier son botillier,
To Bedivere his butler
un sien demaine consillier,
a his-own private counselor
dona tot en fieu Normendie
he-gave all in fief Normandy
qui dont avoit à nom Neustrie.
which then had for name Neustria
Cil dui estoient si féoil
Those two were his faithful
et savoient tot son consoil.
and knew all his counsel
Bologne dona à Holdin,
Boulogne he-gave to Holdin
Le Mans à Borel son cosin.
Le Mans to Borel his cousin
A mult solonc lor gentelisse,
To many according-to their nobility

as pluisors solonc lor servise,
to-the many according-to their service
dona ses délivrés honors,
he-gave his free honors
et les tères as vaassors.
and the lands to-the vavasors

The Feast at Caerleon

VII

Arthur enfeoffs his barons, enriches his intimates, and in April crosses to an England that kisses its men home. At Pentecost he summons his kings, counts, and peoples from every land to Caerleon on the Usk, a city of churches and canons who read the stars, and wears his crown there: four kings carry four golden swords before him, the queen is crowned in her chamber, and the knights run between the minsters to hear the singing and see the ladies. Kay and Bedivere serve the feast, each with a thousand pages dressed in ermine; the knights wear one color and the ladies love only the tried. Then come the games, the music, and the dice, and on the fourth day the gifts, until twelve white-haired messengers from Rome enter with olive branches.

Quant il a ses barons fieués
When he has his barons enfeoffed
et fait rices tos ses privés,
and made rich all his intimates
en avril, quant esté entra,
in April when summer entered
en Engleterre trespassa;
into England he-crossed
mult véissiés, à son repaire,
much you-might-see at his return

tote la gent de joie faire:
all the folk of joy make
les dames baisent lor maris,
the ladies kiss their husbands
et les mères baisent lor fis.
and the mothers kiss their sons
Fils et frères baisent lor pères
Sons and brothers kiss their fathers
et de joie plorent lor mères.
and for joy weep their mothers
Cosines baisent lor cosins,
Cousins kiss their cousins
et les voisines lor voisins;
and the neighbor-women their neighbors
les amies lor amis baisent,
the sweethearts their lovers kiss
et quant lius est, de plus s'aaisent.
and when place is of more themselves-ease
Les tnates beisent lor nevoz;
The aunts kiss their nephews
mult avoit grant joie antre toz.
very was great joy among all
Par rues et par qarrefors,
Through streets and through crossroads
en véissiés ester pluisors
of-them you-might-see stand many
por demander comment lor est
for to-ask how with-them it-is
et qu'il ont fait de lor conquest;
and what-they have done of their conquest

qu'il ont fait et qu'il ont trové
what-they have done and what-they have found
et porquoi ont tant demoré.
and why they-have so-long tarried
Cil racontent les aventures
Those recount the adventures
et les batailles fors et dures,
and the battles strong and hard
et les travax qu'il ont éus
and the toils which-they have had
et les périls qu'il ont véus.
and the perils which-they have seen
Artus honora tos les soens,
Arthur honored all the his-own
mult dona et pramist as boens.
much gave and promised to-the good
Por ses riquesces démostrer
For his riches to-show
et por faire de lui parler,
and for to-make of him speak
prist consel, si li fu loë,
took counsel so to-him it-was advised
qu'à la Pentecoste, en esté,
that-at the Pentecost in summer
féist son barnage assambler
he-make his baronage assemble
et dont se féist coroner.
and then himself make crown
A Karlion, en Glamorgan,
At Caerleon in Glamorgan

manda tos ses barons par ban.
he-summoned all his barons by ban
La cité fu mult aesie
The city was very commodious
et si fu mult bien herbergie:
and so was very well housed
à ces tans, ce disent li home,
at those times this say the men
des rices palais sambla Rome;
for-the rich palaces it-resembled Rome
Charlion dejoste Usques siet,
Caerleon beside Usk sits
un flum qui en Saverne ciet.
a river which into Severn falls
Cil qui d'autre terre venoient
Those who from-other land came
par cel eve venir pooient:
by that water come could
de l'une part ert li rivière,
on the-one side was the river
de l'autre li forès plénière.
on the-other the forest full
Plenté i avoit de pisson,
Plenty there was of fish
et grant plente de venisson.
and great plenty of venison
Beles erent les praaries
Fair were the meadows
et riches les gaagneries.
and rich the tillages

Iglises ot, en la cité,
Churches there-were in the city
dels de bien grant altorité,
two of very great authority
l'une ert de saint Vulc voir martir,
the-one was of saint Vulc true martyr
nonains i eut por Deu servir;
nuns there were for God to-serve
et l'autre d'un sien compagnon
and the-other of-a his-own companion
que l'on clamoit saint Aaron.
whom one called saint Aaron
Là fu li ciès de l'evesquie,
There was the head of the-bishopric
mult i avoit rice clergie,
very there was rich clergy
et canoines de bone vie
and canons of good life
qui savoient d'astronomie;
who knew of-astronomy
des estoiles s'entremetoient:
of-the stars themselves-occupied
al roi Artur sovent disoient
to-the king Arthur often they-said
com faitement li avenroit
how in-manner to-him it-would-befall
des oevres que faire volroit.
of-the works which to-do he-would-wish

Bone ert à cel tans Carlion,
Good was at that time Caerleon
ne fist puis, se empirez, non.
not it-did since except worsened not
Por les grans édéfiemens
For the great buildings
et por les grans aaisemens,
and for the great comforts
por les biax bois et por les prés,
for the fair woods and for the meadows
por les biax lius que vous oés,
for the fair places which you hear
i valt Artur sa cort tenir,
there wished Arthur his court to-hold
tos ses barons i fist venir.
all his barons there he-made come
Manda ses rois et tos ses contes,
He-summoned his kings and all his counts
manda ses dus et ses viscontes;
he-summoned his dukes and his viscounts
manda barons, manda casés,
he-summoned barons he-summoned vassals
manda evesques et abés.
he-summoned bishops and abbots
Manda François et Borgheignons,
He-summoned French and Burgundians
manda Auvergnas et Gascons,
he-summoned Auvergnats and Gascons
manda Normans et Poitevins,
he-summoned Normans and Poitevins

manda Mansaus et Angevins.
he-summoned men-of-Maine and Angevins
Manda Braibençons et Flamens,
He-summoned Brabanters and Flemings
manda Hanuiers et Lorens,
he-summoned Hainaulters and Lorrainers
manda Frisons, manda Tiois,
he-summoned Frisians he-summoned Germans
manda Norois, manda Danois,
he-summoned Norwegians he-summoned Danes
manda Escos, manda Irois,
he-summoned Scots he-summoned Irish
manda puis les Islandois,
he-summoned then the Icelanders
manda puis les Catenois,
he-summoned then the men-of-Caithness
manda puis les Gotlandois.
he-summoned then the Gotlanders
Manda ceus de Galewée,
He-summoned those of Galloway
manda ceus qui tindrent Orcanée;
he-summoned those who held Orkney
et cil vindrent qui mandé furent,
and those came who summoned were
si com à feste venir durent.
just as to feast come they-ought
D'Escoce i vint rois Aguisel
from-Scotland there came king Aguisel
qui fu aparilliés mult bel.
who was arrayed very fair

De Moroif Uriens li rois,
Of Moray Urien the king
et Yvains ses fils li cortois.
and Yvain his son the courteous
Loth de Loenois i vint
Lot of Lothian there came
qui mult grant part de la cort tint;
who very great part of the court held
avoc lui vint Gawains ses fieus
with him came Gawain his son
qui mult estoit franc et gentieus.
who very was free and noble
Stater li rois des Surgalois
Stater the king of-the South-Welsh
et Cadual de Norgalois.
and Cadual of North-Welsh
Cador de Cornuaille i fu,
Cador of Cornwall there was
que li rois a mult chier tenu.
whom the king has very dear held
Morud li quens de Gloecestre,
Morud the count of Gloucester
et Coaurons quens de Guincestre.
and Coaurons count of Winchester
Anaralt vint de Salabere,
Anaralt came from Salisbury
et Rimarec de Cantorbiere.
and Rimarec from Canterbury
Li quens Balduf vint de Silsestre,
The count Balduf came from Silchester

et Vigenin de Leircestre;
and Vigenin from Leicester
et Algal de Guivic un quens
and Algal of Warwick a count
qui en la cort ot mult des soens.
who in the court had many of-the his-own
Autres barons i ot pluisors
Other barons there were many
qui n'orent pas menors honors:
who not-had at-all lesser honors
li fils à Po i fu Donander,
the son of Po there was Donander
et Regien li fius Alauder.
and Regien the son (of-)Alauder
Fils Coil i fu Ceilus
Son (of-)Coil there was Ceilus
et li fils Chater Chatellus.
and the son (of-)Chater Chatellus
Fiex Heledanc quens Huedelin,
Son (of-)Heledanc count Huedelin
et li fiex Crimant Kimbelin.
and the son (of-)Crimant Kimbelin
Grifun i fu li fils Nagroil,
Grifun there was the son (of-)Nagroil
Ron li fils Neco, et Margoil,
Ron the son (of-)Neco and Margoil
Clefaut, et Ringar, et Angan,
Clefaut and Ringar and Angan
et Rimar et Gorbonian.
and Rimar and Gorbonian

Kinlint, Neco et Peredur,
Kinlint Neco and Peredur
que l'on clamoit fil Elidur.
whom one called son (of-)Elidur
De cels qui en la cort estoient
Of those who in the court were
et qui le cors au roi servoient,
and who the body of-the king served
qui sont de la roonde table,
who are of the round table
ne quir jo mie faire fable.
not wish I at-all make fable
D'autres de menor tenéure
Of-others of lesser holding
i avoit tant n'en sai mesure.
there were so-many not-thereof I-know measure
Mult i ot abés et evesques,
Many there were abbots and bishops
et del païs trois arcevesques,
and of-the country three archbishops
cil de Londres, cil d'Elwric,
that-one of London that-one of-York
cil de Carlion saint Dubric;
that-one of Caerleon saint Dubricius
de Rome ot la légation,
from Rome he-had the legateship
si fu de grant religion.
so he-was of great religion

Par s'amor et par s'orison
By his-love and by his-prayer
vint mains enferin à garison;
came many sick to healing
Londres ot à cel tans laissie
London had at that time left
et ot puis de l'arcevesquie
and had since of the-archbishopric
de si que li Anglois regnèrent
until so that the English reigned
qui les yglises désertèrent.
who the churches deserted
Assés ot à la cort barons
Plenty were at the court barons
dont jo ne sai dire les nons.
whereof I not know-how say the names
Villamus i fu, rois d'Irlande,
Villamus there was king of-Ireland
et Malinus li rois d'Islande,
and Malinus the king of-Iceland
et Doldanies de Gollande
and Doldanies of Gotland
qui n'ot pas planté de viande.
who not-had at-all plenty of victuals
Achil i fu rois des Danois,
Achil there was king of-the Danes
et Lot qui ert rois des Norois.
and Lot who was king of-the Norwegians

Et Gonvais li rois d'Orquenie
And Gonvais the king of-Orkney
qui maint ullage a en baillie.
who many-a outlaw has in keeping
D'oltre mer li quens Ligier vint
From-over sea the count Ligier came
qui de Borgogne l'onor tint.
who of Burgundy the-honor held
De Flandres vint li quens Holdin,
From Flanders came the count Holdin
et de Chartres li quens Gérin.
and from Chartres the count Gerin
Cil amena par grant nobloi
That-one brought with great pomp
les douse pers de France à soi.
the twelve peers of France with himself
Guitart i vint quens de Poitiers,
Guitart there came count of Poitiers
et Kex qui estoit quens d'Angiers,
and Kay who was count of-Angers
et Beduiers de Neustrie
and Bedivere of Neustria
que l'on or claime Normandie.
which one now calls Normandy
Del Mans i vint li quens Borel
From-the Mans there came the count Borel
et de Bretaigne quens Hoel.
and of Brittany count Hoel

Hoel et tot cil devers France
Hoel and all those from-toward France
furent de noble contenance;
were of noble bearing
de beles armes, de biax dras,
of fair arms of fair cloths
d'aornemens, de cevax gras.
of-ornaments of horses fat
I n'ot baron jusqu'en Espaigne,
There not-was baron as-far-as Spain
ne jusqu'al Flum en Alemaigne,
nor as-far-as-the River in Germany
qui à la feste ne venist,
who to the feast not came
por ce que la somonse oïst;
for this that the summons he-heard
tant por Artu, tant por ses dons,
as-much for Arthur as-much for his gifts
tant por conoistre ses barons.
as-much for to-know his barons
Tant por veoir ses mananties,
As-much for to-see his riches
tant por oïr ses corteisies;
as-much for to-hear his courtesies
tant por amor, tant por banie,
as-much for love as-much for summons
tant por conoistre sa baillie.
as-much for to-know his domain

Mult grant plait i avoit tenu
Very great plea there he-had held
et mult grant cort i ot tennu.
and very great court there he-had held
Quant la cort al roi fu jostée,
When the court of-the king was joined
mult véissiés forte asamblée,
much you-might-see strong assembly
et tote la cité frémir;
and all the city stir
sergans aler, sergans venir,
sergeants go sergeants come
et ostex saisir et porprandre;
and lodgings seize and occupy
maisons veair, cortines tandre.
houses clear curtains hang
Les marescax ostex livrer,
The marshals lodgings allot
soliers et cambres délivrer.
upper-rooms and chambers free
Et cil qui nul ostel n'avoient
And those who any lodging not-had
lor loges et lor trés tendoient.
their huts and their tents pitched
Mult véissiés as escuiers
Much you-might-see of-the squires
palefrois mener et deffers
palfreys lead and destriers
seles metre, seles oster,
saddles put saddles remove

lorains terdre, lorains laver,
harness wipe harness wash
faire estables, paissons fichier,
make stables stakes drive
cevax mener et estrillier.
horses lead and curry
Ceval tondre, ceval férer,
Horse clip horse shoe
et seles des cevaus oster.
and saddles from-the horses remove
Cevaux torchier et abevrer,
Horses rub-down and water
avaine et fuerre, erbe porter.
oats and fodder grass carry
Mult véissiés en pluisors sens
Much you-might-see in many directions
vallés aler et camberlens.
grooms go and chamberlains
Garnimens et mantiax ploier,
Garments and mantles fold
et enverser et atacier,
and turn-out and fasten
péliçons porter vairs et gris;
furs carry vair and gray
foire samblast, ce vous fust vis.
fair it-would-seem this to-you were seeming
Al matin, al jor de la feste,
In-the morning on-the day of the feast
ce dist l'estoire de la geste,
this says the-story of the chronicle

li vinrent tot li arcevesque
to-him came all the archbishops
et li abé et li evesque.
and the abbots and the bishops
El palais le roi coronèrent,
In-the palace the king they-crowned
et à l'église le menèrent:
and to the-church him led
dui archevesque le menoient
two archbishops him led
qui à ses deus costés aloient;
who at his two sides went
chascuns un bras li sostenoit
each an arm of-him supported
de si qu'à son siège venoit.
until so that-to his seat he-came
Qatre espées i ot à or
Four swords there were of gold
que pont, que helt, que entretor.
as-well pommel as hilt as round-about
Qatre rois ces quatre portoient
Four kings these four carried
qui par devant Artur aloient;
who through before Arthur went
cist mestiers lor apartenoit,
this office to-them belonged
quant li rois Artus cort tenoit.
when the king Arthur court held
Cil d'Escoce, cil de Susgales,
That-one of-Scotland that-one of South-Wales

et li tiers estoit de Norgales;
and the third was of North-Wales
Cador de Cornuaille estoit
Cador of Cornwall was
qui la qarte espée portoit.
who the fourth sword carried
N'avoit pas menor disnité
Not-he-had at-all lesser dignity
que se il fust rois coroné.
than if he were king crowned
Dubric qui de Rome ert légas,
Dubricius who of Rome was legate
et de Charlion ert prélas,
and of Caerleon was prelate
emprist à faire le mostier
undertook to do the minster-service
et ce estoit en son mestier.
and this was in his office
La roine par grant esgart,
The queen with great regard
fu servie de l'autre part.
was served on the-other side
Devant la feste avoit mandées
Before the feast she-had summoned
et à cele cort assamblées
and at that court assembled
les grant dames del païs,
the great ladies of-the country
et les fames à ses amis;
and the wives of her friends

ses amies et ses parantes
her friends and her kinswomen
et meschines beles et gantes
and maidens fair and graceful
fist à la feste à soi venir.
she-made to the feast to herself come
Por cele feste maintenir
For that feast to-maintain
en sa chambre fu coronée,
in her chamber she-was crowned
et el temple as nonains menée.
and into-the temple of-the nuns led
Por la grant presse départir,
For the great press to-part
que nus masters ne peust sofrir,
which any master not could endure
quatre dames qui devant vinrent
four ladies who before came
quatre cornelles blances tinrent;
four crows white held
as quatre estoient mariées
to-the four they-were married
qui portoient les quatre espées.
who carried the four swords
Après la roïne venoient
After the queen came
altres dames qui la suivoient
other ladies who her followed
à grant joie et à grant liesce,
with great joy and with great gladness

et à mervillose noblesse.
and with marvelous nobleness
Mult estoient bien atornées,
Very they-were well attired
bien vestues, bien afublées.
well dressed well cloaked
Mainte an i poïssiez véoir
Many-a-one of-them there you-could see
qui mainte autre cuidoit valoir.
who many-a other thought to-be-worth
Mult i avoit chiers garnimens,
Much there was dear garments
chiers ators et chiers vestemens;
dear attires and dear vestments
rices bliax, rices mantiax,
rich tunics rich mantles
rices nosques, rices aniax.
rich brooches rich rings
Mainte pélice vaire, grise,
Many-a fur vair gray
et garnemens de mainte guise;
and garments of many-a guise
mult véissiés grant riceche
much you-might-see great richness
et demener mult grant noblece.
and display very great nobleness
As processions à grant presse,
At-the processions with great press
cascuns d'aler devant s'engresse.
each of-going before himself-strives

Quant li messe fu commencie
When the mass was begun
qui durement fu essaucie:
which greatly was exalted
mult oïssiez orgres soner,
much you-might-hear organs sound
et clers chanter et orguener.
and clerks sing and make-organum
Voiz abessier et voiz lever,
Voices lower and voices raise
chant avaler et chant monter.
song descend and song mount
Mult véissiés par ces mostiers
Much you-might-see through these minsters
aler et venir chevaliers,
go and come knights
tant por oïr les clers canter,
as-much for to-hear the clerks sing
tant por les dames agarder.
as-much for the ladies to-look-at
D'un mostier à altre coroient;
From-one minster to other they-ran
sovent aloient et venoient,
often they-went and came
ne savoient chertainement
not they-knew certainly
alques fuissent plus longement.
somewhat they-should-be more long

Ne se pooient saoler
Not themselves could sate
de ce oïr ne escouter;
of this hearing nor listening
se toute jour ainsi durast,
if all day thus it-lasted
je cuit, jà ne leur anuiast.
I think ever not them it-would-weary
Quant li services est finés,
When the service is ended
et Ite missa est cantés,
and Go dismissed it-is sung
li rois a sa corone ostée
the king has his crown removed
qu'il avoit al mostier portée;
which-he had at-the minster worn
altre corone menor prist
other crown lesser he-took
et la roïne ansement fist;
and the queen likewise did
jus misent les greignors ators,
down they-put the greater attires
plus légiers prisent et menors.
more light they-took and lesser
Quant li rois partist del mostier
When the king departed from-the minster
en son palais ala mengier.
into his palace went to-eat
La roïne en une altre entra,
The queen into an other entered

et les dames od li mena,
and the ladies with her led
et mult ot en cascune joie.
and much was in each joy
Costume soloit estre à Troie,
Custom was-wont to-be at Troy
et Breton encore la tenoient,
and Britons still it held
quant alqune feste faisoient,
when any feast they-made
li home od les homes manjoient
the men with the men ate
que nule dame n'i menoient.
that any lady not-there they-led
Les dames manjoient aillors;
The ladies ate elsewhere
n'i avoit que lor servitors
not-there was but their servitors
qui les servirent ricement
who them served richly
si comme à rice cort apent.
just as to rich court belongs
Quant li rois fu al dois assis,
When the king was at-the dais seated
à la costume del païs,
in the custom of-the country
assis sont li baron entor,
seated are the barons around
cascuns en l'ordre de signor.
each in the-order of lordship

Li senescax Kex avoit non,
The seneschal Kay had name
vestus d'un vermel siglaton
dressed in-a vermilion silk
cil servi al mangier le roi;
that-one served at-the meal the king
mil damisiax avoit à soi
thousand squires he-had with himself
qui estoient vestu d'ermine,
who were dressed in-ermine
cil servoient de la quisine;
those served of the kitchen
sovent aloient et espès
often they-went and thick
escueles portent et mès.
bowls they-carry and dishes
Beduer, de l'altre partie,
Bedivere on the-other part
servoit de la botellerie:
served of the buttery
ensamble lui mil damisiax
together-with him thousand squires
vestus d'ermines gens et biax.
dressed in-ermines noble and fair
As nés d'or portoient le vin
In-the nefs of-gold they-carried the wine
à copes, à hanas d'or fin;
in cups in goblets of-gold fine

n'en i avoit nul qui servist
not-of-them there was anyone who served
qui d'ermine ne se vestist.
who in-ermine not himself dressed
Beduer qui devant aloit,
Bedivere who before went
qui la cope le roi portoit,
who the cup (of-)the king carried
et li autre emprès lui venoient
and the others after him came
qui del vin as autres servoient.
who of-the wine to-the others served
La roïne r'avoit sergans,
The queen in-turn-had sergeants
jo ne sai dire quels ne qans.
I not know-how say which nor how-many
Ricement fu et bel servie
Richly she-was and fair served
ele et tote sa compaignie.
she and all her company
Mult véissiés rice servise
Much you-might-see rich service
mès et boires de mainte guise
dishes and drinks of many-a guise
mult véissiés riche veissèle
much you-might-see rich vessels
qui mult ert chière et mult ert bèle;
which very was dear and very was fair

et de riches mangiers servise
and of rich foods service
et de boivre de mainte guise.
and of drink of many-a guise
Ne puis tot, ne ne sai nomer,
Not I-can all nor not know-how name
ne les ricoises aconter.
nor the riches recount
De biax homes et de noblèce,
Of fair men and of nobleness
et de plenté et de ricèce,
and of plenty and of richness
de cortoisie et d'onor,
of courtesy and of-honor
portoit Engletere la flor
bore England the flower
de tos les resnes environ
of all the realms around
et sor tos cels que nous savon.
and above all those which we know
Plus erent cortois et vaillant,
More they-were courteous and valiant
néis li povre païsant
even the poor peasants
que chevalier en autres regnes;
than knights in other realms
et autre si erent les fenés.
and other so were the women

Jà n'i véissiés chevalier
Ever not-there you-might-see knight
qui auques féist à proisier;
who aught did to praise
qui armes et dras et ator
who arms and clothes and attire
n'éussent tot d'une color.
not-had all of-one color
D'une color armes avoient
Of-one color arms they-had
et d'une color se vestoient;
and of-one color themselves dressed
si estoient dames prisies
so were ladies esteemed
d'une color aparillies.
of-one color arrayed
Ne jà chevalier n'i éust,
Nor ever knight not-there were
de quel parage que il fust,
of what parentage that he were
jà péust, en tote sa vie,
ever could in all his life
avoir bele dame à amie
have fair lady for sweetheart
se il n'éust avant esté
if he not-had before been
de cevalerie prové.
in chivalry proved
Li chevalier miax en valoient,
The knights better thereby were-worth

et en estor miax en faisoient;
and in battle better thereby did
et les dames plus le servoient
and the ladies more it served
et plus castement en vivoient.
and more chastely thereby lived
Quant li rois leva del mangier
When the king rose from-the meal
alé sont tuit esbanoier;
gone are all to-sport
de la cité as cans issirent.
from the city to-the fields they-went-out
As pluisors gius se départirent:
To-the many games themselves they-dispersed
li un alèrent bohorder
the ones went to-joust
et lor isniax cevax prover.
and their swift horses to-prove
Li autre alèrent escremir,
The others went to-fence
ou piere jeter, ou salir.
or stone throw or leap
Tex i avoit qui dars lançoient
Such there were who darts hurled
et tex i avoit qui jetoient.
and such there were who threw
Chascuns del geu s'antremetoient
Each of-the game themselves-busied
dont entremetre se savoit.
whereof busy himself he-knew-how

Cil qui d'aucuns giu pris avoit,
That-one who of-some game prize had
et qui ses compaignons vainqoit,
and who his companions conquered
estoit semprès al roi menés
was straightway to-the king led
et à tos les barons mostrés;
and to all the barons shown
et li rois del sien li donoit
and the king of-the his-own to-him gave
tant que cil tos lies en aloit.
so-much that that-one all glad thence went
Les dames sor le mur montoient,
The ladies onto the wall climbed
qui les jus agarder voloient,
who the games to-watch wished
qui ami avoit en la place,
who sweetheart had in the place
tost li monstre l'oil et la face.
quickly to-him shows the-eye and the face
Mult ot à la cort jugléors,
Many were at the court jongleurs
chantéors, estrumantéors;
singers instrumentalists
mult poïssiés oïr chançons,
much you-could hear songs
rotruanges et noviax sons.
rotrouenges and new tunes
Vieléures, lais et notes,
Viol-pieces lays and tunes

lais de vieles, lais de notes;
lays of viols lays of tunes
lais de harpe et de fretiax;
lays of harp and of panpipes
lyre, tympres et chalemiax,
lyre timbrels and shawms
symphonies, psaltérions,
hurdy-gurdies psalteries
monacordes, cymbes, chorons.
monochords cymbals horns
Asez i ot tresgitéors,
Many there were jugglers
joeresses et joéors;
women-players and players
li un dient contes et fables.
the ones tell tales and fables
Auquant demandent dez et tables:
Some ask dice and tables
tex i a joent à hasart,
such there are play at hazard
ce est uns geus de male part.
this is a game of evil sort
As eschas joent li plusor,
At-the chess play the most
au geu del mat ou au mellor.
at-the game of-the mate or at-the better
Dui et dui au geu s'acompeignent,
Two and two at-the game themselves-pair
li un perdent, li un gaheignent:
the ones lose the ones win

sor gaiges anpruntent deniers,
on pledges they-borrow pennies
onze por douse volantiers.
eleven for twelve willingly
Gaiges donent, gaiges seisissent,
Pledges they-give pledges they-seize
gaiges prenent, gaiges plévissent.
pledges they-take pledges they-warrant
Sovant jurent, sovant s'afichent,
Often they-swear often themselves-assert
sovant boisent et sovant trichent;
often they-cheat and often trick
mult estrivent, mult se corrocent.
much they-quarrel much themselves anger
Sovant mescontent, sovant grocent;
Often they-miscount often grumble
deus et deus gietent et puis quernes,
two and two they-throw and then fours
anbes as, et le tierz, et ternes.
both aces and the third and threes
A la foiee gietent quinnes,
At the time they-throw fives
à la foiee gietent sinnes;
at the time they-throw sixes
sis, cinq, trois, quatre, dui et as.
six five three four two and ace
Ont à plusorz toluz lor dras;
They-have from several taken their clothes
bon espoir a qui les dez tient,
good hope has who the dice holds

quant ses conpainz les a s'escrient;
when his companion them has themselves-cry-out
asez sovent noisent et crient,
quite often they-clamor and cry
li un as autres sovant dient:
the ones to-the others often say
vous me boisiez, defors gitez,
you me cheat outside throw
crolez la main, hociez les dez;
shake the hand shake the dice
je l'an vi avant vostre get,
I it-thereof saw before your throw
querrez déniers, metez, g'i met.
seek pennies stake I-there stake
Tex s'i puest aséoir vestuz
Such himself-there can sit clothed
qui au partir s'an lieve nuz;
who at-the parting himself-thence rises naked
trois jors dura li feste issi.
three days lasted the feast thus
Quant vint al qart, al mercredi,
When it-came to-the fourth on-the Wednesday
li rois les damisiax fieua,
the king the squires enfeoffed
honors delivres lor dona.
honors free to-them gave
Lor services à cels randi
Their services to those he-rendered
qui por tere l'orent servi:
who for land him-had served

bors dona et casteleries,
boroughs he-gave and castellanies
et envesquies et abéies.
and bishoprics and abbeys
A cels qui d'autre terre estoient,
To those who of-other land were
qui por amor à lui venoient,
who for love to him came
dona armes et bons destriers
he-gave arms and good destriers
et ses aornemens plus chiers.
and his ornaments most dear
Donna déduiz, donna balez,
He-gave pleasures he-gave dances
donna levriers, donna brachez,
he-gave greyhounds he-gave hounds
donna pélices, donna dras,
he-gave furs he-gave cloths
donna copes, donna hénas,
he-gave cups he-gave goblets
donna pailes, donna eniax,
he-gave silks he-gave rings
donna bliauz, donna mantiaux,
he-gave tunics he-gave mantles
donna lances, donna espées,
he-gave lances he-gave swords
donna sajètes barbelées;
he-gave arrows barbed
donna herneis, donna escuz,
he-gave harness he-gave shields

donna espiez bien esmoluz.
he-gave spears well sharpened
Dona lieparz et dona ors,
He-gave leopards and he-gave bears
seles, lorains et chacéors;
saddles harness and hunters
dona haubèrs, dona destriers
he-gave hauberks he-gave destriers
dona hiaumes, dona deniers.
he-gave helms he-gave pennies
Donna argent et donna or,
He-gave silver and he-gave gold
donna le miex de son trésor.
he-gave the best of his treasure
N'i ot homme qui n'en vausist,
Not-there was man who not-thereof was-worth
qui d'autrui terre à lui vensist,
who from-another's land to him came
que li rois ne donnast tel don
that the king not gave such gift
qui hennor fu à cel baron.
which honor was to that baron
Mult dona li rois rices don
Much gave the king rich gifts
as chevaliers et as barons.
to-the knights and to-the barons
Artus fu assis à un dois,
Arthur was seated at a dais
environ lui contes et rois;
around him counts and kings

es vous douse homes blans, quenus,
behold you twelve men white hoary
bien atornés et bien vestus,
well attired and well dressed
dui à dui ens el palais vindrent,
two by two in into-the palace came
et dui à dui as mains se tindrent.
and two by two by-the hands themselves held
Douse estoient, et douse rains
Twelve they-were and twelve branches
d'olive portent en lor mains.
of-olive they-carry in their hands
Petit pas, ordenéément
Little pace orderly
et vinrent mult avenanment;
and they-came very gracefully
parmi la sale trespassèrent,
through the hall they-passed
al roi vinrent, se l' saluèrent:
to-the king they-came so him greeted
de Rome, ce disent, venoient
from Rome this they-say they-came
et message de Rome estoient.
and messengers of Rome were
Une charte ont desvelopée,
A charter they-have unrolled
à Artur l'a l'uns d'als livrée,
to Arthur it-has the-one of-them delivered

de par l'empereur de Rome;
from by the-emperor of Rome
ce fut de la carte la some:
this was of the charter the sum

Rome's Letter, and the Council

VIII

Lucius, who holds Rome, summons Arthur to appear there by mid-August and answer for tribute withheld and Frollo's death, or he will cross Mont Joux. In the Giants' tower Cador welcomes a war that wakes the Britons from idleness, and Gawain praises peace. Arthur answers that what Caesar took by force is no right, and that Belinus and Brennius, Constantine and Maximian held Rome; Hoel recalls the Sibyl's three British kings who would take Rome and promises ten thousand knights, and Aguisel promises as many and urges war. The messengers go back honored; Lucius gathers his kings, from Greece and Crete to Spain, Africa, and Babylon, with the senators, and Arthur numbers his own hosts and bids them meet at Barfleur.

Luces qui Rome a em baillie
Lucius who Rome has in keeping
et de Rome la signorie,
and of Rome the lordship
mande ce qu'il a deservi
sends that which-he has deserved
al roi Artur son anemi:
to-the king Arthur his enemy
mult me desdaigne, en mervillant,
much myself I-disdain in marveling
et me mervel, en desdegnant,
and myself marvel in disdaining

que par forfait et par orgoel
that by misdeed and by pride
osa vers moi olvrir ton oel.
dared toward me open thine eye
Mult me desdaing, mult me mervel
Much myself I-disdain much myself marvel
de ce que tu prans tel consel
of this that thou takest such counsel
de prandre contre Rome estrif
of taking against Rome strife
tant com saces un romain vif.
as-long as thou-knowest a Roman alive
Mult par as fait grant estotie
Very much thou-hast done great folly
que vers nous a pris envaïe,
that against us has taken assault
qui tot le mont vengier devons,
who all the world avenge ought
et qui le cief de mont tenons.
and who the head of world hold
Ne l' sés encore, mais tu saras;
Not it thou-knowest yet but thou wilt-know
ne l'as véu, mais tu verras
not it-hast seen but thou wilt-see
com grans cose a à corechier
how great thing it-is to anger
Rome qui tot doit justichier.
Rome which all ought rule

Tu es issus de ta nature
Thou art gone-out of thy nature
et trespassé as ta mesure.
and passed hast thy measure
Sés tu qui es et dont tu viens,
Knowest thou who thou-art and whence thou comest
qui nos tréus prens et retiens?
who our tributes takest and retainest
Nos tères et nos tréus prans,
Our lands and our tributes thou-takest
tu fais que fax qui ne le rans;
thou dost like false-one who not it renders
poi les poras or mais tenir,
little them thou-wilt-be-able now more hold
que nous ne's te façons guerpir.
that we not-them thee make forsake
Tu veus mostrer et par mervelle
Thou wishest to-show and by marvel
que li lions fuit por l'oelle,
that the lion flees for the-sheep
et que li leus fuit por le cievre,
and that the wolf flees for the goat
et li lupars avant le lièvre.
and the leopard before the hare
Ne puet mie issi avenir,
Not can at-all thus happen
nature ne l' poroit sofrir.
nature not it could suffer
Julius Cesar, nostre ancestre,
Julius Caesar our ancestor

mais poi le prises, puet cel estre,
but little him thou-prizest may that be
prist Bretaigne, si ot tréu
took Britain so had tribute
et li nostre l'ont puis éu;
and the ours it-have since had
des autres illes environ
of-the other isles around
tréu recevoir devrion.
tribute receive we-ought
L'un et l'autre, par présonptie,
The-one and the-other by presumption
nous a tolu, si fais folie.
from-us has taken so thou-dost folly
Encor a fait forçor hontage
Yet he-has done greater shame
dont plus nous est que del damage:
whereof more to-us it-is than of-the damage
Frolle nostre baron a mort;
Frollo our baron he-has killed
France et Bretaigne. tiens à tort.
France and Britain thou-holdest with wrong
Por ce que tu n'en as doté
For this that thou not-thereof hast feared
Rome, ne sa grant dinité,
Rome nor her great dignity
te somont li Senés et mande,
thee summons the Senate and commands

et par poesté te commande
and by power thee orders
que tu soies à mi-aost,
that thou be at mid-August
à Rome, que que il te cost,
at Rome what that it thee cost
aparilliés à faire droit
prepared to do right
de ce que tu li as toloit;
of that which thou from-it hast taken
si feras satisfacion
so thou-wilt-make satisfaction
de ce dont nous t'aquseron;
of that whereof we thee-shall-accuse
et se tu vas rien parlognant,
and if thou goest anything delaying
que si ne l' faces com jo mant,
that so not it thou-do as I command
Mont Giu à force passerai,
Mont Joux by force I-shall-cross
Bretaigne et France retolrai.
Britain and France I-shall-take-back
Ne quit pas que tu m'i atandes,
Not I-think at-all that thou me-there await
ne que de moi France desfandes.
nor that from me France thou-defend
Jà de ça mer, al mien espoir,
Ever of this-side sea at-the my belief
ne t'oseras faire véoir;
not thee-wilt-dare make see

et se tu de ça mer estoies
and if thou of this-side sea wert
jà ma venue n'atendroies,
ever my coming not-wouldst-await
ne saras en cel liu tapir
nor thou-wilt-know-how in that place to-hide
que jo ne t'en face salir:
that I not thee-thence make leap
loié à Rome te menrai
bound to Rome thee I-shall-lead
et al séné te liverrai.
and to-the senate thee I-shall-deliver
A ceste parole a grant bruit,
At this word is great uproar
et mult s'en corochièrent tuit:
and much themselves-thereof angered all
maint Breton oissiés crier
many-a Briton you-might-hear cry
et Deu aramir et jurer
and God call-to-witness and swear
que cil seront deshonoré
that those will-be dishonored
qui le message ont aporté,
who the message have brought
et lors ont mult as messagiers
and then they-have much to-the messengers
dit ramprones et reproviers.
said taunts and reproaches
Mais li rois se leva em piés,
But the king himself rose on feet

si lor cria: taisiés, taisiés;
so to-them cried be-silent be-silent
n'i aront mal, messagier sont,
not-there they-will-have harm messengers they-are
signor ont, lor message font;
lord they-have their message they-do
dire pueent ce qu'il vauront,
say they-can that which-they will-wish
10975 jà par home mal n'i aront.
ever by man harm not-there they-will-have
Quant li noise fu trespassée
When the noise was passed
et li cors fu asséurée,
and the court was reassured
ses demaines et ses casés
his demesne-men and his vassals
a li rois à lui apelés,
has the king to him called
10980 en une soie tor perrine
into a his-own tower of-stone
que l'on apeloit Gingantine;
which one called Gingantine
consel, ce dist, prendre voloit
counsel this he-said to-take he-wished
que il as Romains respondroit.
what he to-the Romans would-answer
Jà estoient sor les degrés
Already they-were on the steps
10985 baron et prince de tos lés,
barons and princes of all sides

quant Cador dist, en sosriant,
when Cador said in smiling
voiant le roi qui va avant:
seeing the king who goes before
en grant crieme ai, dist-il, esté
in great fear I-have said-he been
et mainte fois j'ai pensé
and many-a time I-have thought
que par oisdives et par pès
that by idleness and by peace
devenissent Breton malvès:
might-become Britons base
car oisdive atrait malvaistié,
for idleness draws baseness
et maint home a aparecié.
and many-a man has made-lazy
Oisdive met home en perece,
Idleness puts man in sloth
oisdive amenuise proèce;
idleness diminishes prowess
oisdive esmuet les leceries,
idleness stirs the lecheries
les jurèces et drueries.
the youthful-follies and love-affairs
Par lonc repos, et par oisdive
By long rest and by idleness
est jovente trop ententive
is youth too intent
as gas, as deduis, et as tables,
on-the jests on-the pleasures and on-the tables

et as autres gius deportables;
and on-the other games diverting
par lon sojor et par repos
by long sojourn and by rest
pueent Breton perdre lor los.
can Britons lose their renown
Piece avons esté endormi,
A-while we-have been asleep
mais dame Dex, soie merci,
but lord God his mercy
nos a un petit esvilliés,
us has a little awakened
qui Romains a encoragiés
who Romans has encouraged
de chalangier nostre païs
of claiming our country
et les altres, ce m'est avis.
and the others this to-me-is opinion
Se Romain en aus tant se fient
If Romans in themselves so-much themselves trust
qu'il se facent que par brief dient;
that-they themselves do what by letter they-say
encor aront Berton honor
yet will-have Britons honor
de hardiement et de valor;
of boldness and of valor
jà longue pès ne amerai
ever long peace not I-shall-love
ne onques longue pès n'amai.
nor ever long peace not-I-loved

Sire quens, dist Gauvains, par foi,
Lord count said Gawain by faith
por noiant estes en esfroi:
for nothing you-are in alarm
bone est la pais après la guerre,
good is the peace after the war
plus rice et mildre en est li terre.
more rich and better thereby is the land
Mult sunt bones les gaberies,
Very are good the jests
li deduit et les drueries:
the pleasures and the love-affairs
por la noblesce de sa mie
for the nobleness of his sweetheart
fait jouenes hom cevalerie.
does young man chivalry
A ces paroles que cil disent,
At these words which those say
en la tor vinrent, si s'asisent.
into the tower they-came so themselves-sat
Quant Artus les vit tos séans,
When Arthur them saw all sitting
tos ententis et tos taisans.
all attentive and all silent
Un poi s'estut et si pensa,
A little himself-stood and so thought
puis leva le cief, ci parla:
then raised the head so spoke
baron, fait-il, qui estes ci,
barons says-he who are here

mi compaignon et mi ami,
my companions and my friends
compaignon de prosperité,
companions of prosperity
et compaignon d'aversité;
and companions of-adversity
se grant guerre m'est esméue
if great war to-me-is stirred-up
vous l'avés à moi sostenue.
you it-have with me sustained
Se j'ai perdu, ou j'ai conquis,
If I-have lost or I-have conquered
l'un et l'autre avés od moi pris;
the-one and the-other you-have with me taken
de ma perte estes parçonier
of my loss you-are partners
et del gaaing, quant je l' conquier.
and of-the gain when I it conquer
Par vous et par vostre ajutore
By you and by your help
ai jo éu mainte victore;
have I had many-a victory
mené vous ai à grant besoing
led you I-have in great need
par mer, par terre, près et loing.
by sea by land near and far
Tostans vous ai trové féels
Always you I-have found faithful
en afaires et en consels;
in affairs and in counsels

les tères d'ici environ
the lands of-here around
ai par vous en subjesion.
I-have by you in subjection
Oï avés le mandement
Heard you-have the message
et des letres l'entendement;
and of-the letters the-meaning
et les forfaits et la fierté
and the misdeeds and the fierceness
que li Romain nous ont mandé.
which the Romans to-us have sent
Assés nous ont contraliés,
Plenty us they-have opposed
et aatis et manaciés.
and challenged and threatened
Mais se Dex garist moi et vous,
But if God protects me and you
bien serons des Romains rescols.
well we-shall-be from-the Romans rescued
Rices sont et de grant pooir,
Rich they-are and of great power
si nous estouroit por véoir
so us it-would-behoove for to-see
que poron dire et que feron
what we-shall-be-able say and what we-shall-do
avenanment et à raison.
fittingly and with reason
Quant cose est avant porvéue,
When thing is beforehand foreseen

mius est al besoing maintenue;
better it-is at-the need maintained
qui voit la sajète venir
who sees the arrow come
torner se doit et bien covrir;
turn himself ought and well cover
tot ensement devomes faire.
all likewise we-ought do
Li Romain voelent à nous traire,
The Romans wish at us to-shoot
et nous nous devons consillier
and we ourselves ought counsel
qu'il ne nous puissent damagier.
that-they not us can harm
De Bretaigne tréu demandent,
Of Britain tribute they-demand
avoir le soelent, ce nous mandent,
have it they-were-wont this to-us they-send
des autres illes ensement,
of-the other isles likewise
et de France demainement.
and of France directly
De Bretaigne premièrement
Of Britain first
respondrai avenablement:
I-shall-answer fittingly
Cesar à forçor le conquist,
Caesar by force it conquered
fors hons fu et sa force fist.
strong man he-was and his force did

Ne se porent Breton desfandre,
Not themselves could Britons defend
tréu leur fist à force randre:
tribute them he-made by force render
mais force n'est mie droiture,
but force not-is at-all right
ains est orgels et desmesure;
rather it-is pride and excess
l'on ne tient mie ce de droit
one not holds at-all that by right
que l'on a par force toloit.
which one has by force taken
Bien nous loist ce par droit tenir
Well to-us it-is-lawful that by right to-hold
que il solent as nos tolir.
which they were-wont from-the ours to-take
Reprové nous ont les damages
Reproached us they-have the damages
et les paines et les hontages,
and the pains and the shames
et les pertes et les dolors
and the losses and the griefs
qu'il firent à nos ancissors
which-they did to our ancestors
vanté se sont qu'il les venquirent
boasted themselves they-are that-they them conquered
et fiés et rentes lor tolirent,
and fiefs and rents from-them took

tant les devons nous plus gréver
so-much them ought we more harm
et plus nos ont à restorer:
and more us they-have to restore
haïr devons cels qui's haïrent
hate we-ought those who-them hated
et caus laidir qui les laidirent.
and those wrong who them wronged
Mal lor firent, ce nos reproevent,
Ill to-them they-did this us they-reproach
tréu en orent, tréu roevent;
tribute thereof they-had tribute they-ask
tréu voelent par iretage
tribute they-wish by heritage
la honte as nous et le damage.
the shame to us and the damage
Tréu de Bretaigne avoir soelent,
Tribute of Britain have they-were-wont
por ce de nous avoir le voelent;
for this from us to-have it they-wish
par mesme ceste aquoison,
by same this occasion
et tot par altre tel raison
and all by other such reason
poons nous Rome calangier
can we Rome claim
et bien li devons deraisnier.
and well it we-ought vindicate

Bélins qui fu rois des Bretons
Belinus who was king of-the Britons
et Braisnes quens des Borgignons,
and Brennius count of-the Burgundians
dui frère de Bretaigne né,
two brothers of Britain born
chevalier vaillant et sené,
knights valiant and wise
alèrent à Rome, si l'asistrent,
went to Rome so it-besieged
et par lor proëce la pristrent.
and by their prowess it took
Vint quatre ostages pendirent
Twenty four hostages they-hanged
si que tos lor parens les virent,
so that all their kinsmen them saw
qui lor donèrent en ostage
who to-them gave in hostage
que lor donroient tréuage;
that to-them they-would-give tribute
lor convenances lor rompirent,
their covenants to-them they-broke
por ce lor ostages pendirent.
for this their hostages they-hanged
Et quant Bélin s'en repaira
And when Belinus himself-thence returned
à Rome à son frère commanda.
at Rome to his brother he-entrusted
Lairai ester Braine et Belin,
I-shall-let be Brennius and Belinus

si comterai de Constantin:
so I-shall-tell of Constantine
de Bretaigne fu, fils Elaine,
of Britain he-was son (of-)Helena
cil tint et ot Rome en demaine;
that-one held and had Rome in demesne
Maximians rois de Bretaigne
Maximian king of Britain
cil conquist France et Alemaigne,
that-one conquered France and Germany
Mont Giu passa et Lombardie,
Mont Joux crossed and Lombardy
et de Rome ot la signorie.
and of Rome had the lordship
Cil furent mi parent proçain,
Those were my kinsmen near
et cascuns ot Rome en sa main.
and each had Rome in his hand
Or poés oïr et savoir
Now you-can hear and know
qu'ausi doi je Rome avoir,
that-as-well ought I Rome have
com il Bretaigne, par raison,
as they Britain by reason
se nos as ancissors gardon:
if we to-the ancestors look
Romain en ont éu tréu
Romans thereof have had tribute
et mi parent l'ont d'aus éu;
and my kinsmen it-have from-them had

il claiment Bretaigne et jo Rome.
they claim Britain and I Rome
De mon consel est ce la some:
Of my counsel is this the sum
que il ait la rente et la terre
that he have the rent and the land
qui ains pora l'altre conquerre.
who first will-be-able the-other conquer
De France et des autres contrées
Of France and of-the other countries
que de lor mains avons ostées,
which from their hands we-have removed
ne doivent il nul plait tenir,
not ought they any plea hold
quant il ne's porent garentir.
since they not-them could protect
Il ne vaurent u il ne porent,
They not wished or they not could
ou puet cel estre, droit n'i orent,
or may that be right not-there they-had
car à force par covoitise
for by force through covetousness
les tenoient en lor justise,
them they-held in their rule
or ait tot qui avoir le puet,
now let-have all who have it can
autre droiture n'i estuet.
other right not-there is-needed
Li emperère nous manace,
The emperor us threatens

ne voille Deu que mal nous face!
not may-wish God that ill us he-do
Nos teres, ce dist, nous tolra
Our lands this he-says from-us he-will-take
et à Rome pris nos manra;
and to Rome taken us he-will-lead
petit nous prise, poi nous crient,
little us he-prizes little us fears
mais, se Deu plaist, se il ça vient,
but if God please if he here comes
ains qu'il s'am puisse repairier,
before that-he himself-thence can return
n'aura talent de manecier.
not-he-will-have desire of threatening
Nos chalonjons et cil calange,
We claim and that-one claims
qui tot porra prandre, si prange.
who all will-be-able take so let-him-take
Quant Artus li rois a parlé
When Arthur the king has spoken
et as barons a ce mostré;
and to-the barons has this shown
tex i ot qui après parlèrent
such there were who after spoke
et tex i ot qui escoutèrent.
and such there were who listened
Hoel parla après le roi:
Hoel spoke after the king
sire, dist-il, en moie foi,
lord said-he on my faith

mult parolés avenanment,
very you-speak fittingly
nus n'i puet metre amendement.
anyone not-there can put amendment
Mande ta gent, somons tes homes,
Summon thy folk call thy men
et nous qui ci à ta cort somes.
and us who here at thy court are
Trespasse mer et passe France,
Cross sea and pass France
si la saisis sans demorance;
so it seize without delay
passe Mont Geu, pran Lombardie.
pass Mont Joux take Lombardy
L'emperéor qui te deffie
The-emperor who thee defies
met en estor et en esfroi,
put in battle and in alarm
qu'assés ait à entendre en toi;
that-enough be-have to attend in thee
tel plait ont Romain esméu
such plea have Romans stirred
dont il seront tot confondu.
whereof they will-be all confounded
Dame Dex te velt essauchier,
Lord God thee wishes to-exalt
ne demorer, ne t'atargier,
nor delay nor thee-tarry

si met Rome en ta poesté
so put Rome in thy power
qui metre s'i velt de son gré.
who to-put itself-there wishes of its will
Membre toi que Sibile dist
Remember thee what Sibyl said
ès profésies que ele escrit:
in-the prophecies which she writes
que trois roi de Bretaigne istroient
that three kings of Britain would-come-forth
qui Rome à force conquerroient.
who Rome by force would-conquer
Dui de cels sont trespassé
Two of those are passed-away
qui de Rome ont signor esté;
who of Rome have lords been
li premiers de cels fu Belins
the first of those was Belinus
et li secons fu Costentins.
and the second was Constantine
Tu es li ters qui Rome auras
Thou art the third who Rome wilt-have
et à force la conquerras:
and by force it wilt-conquer
en toi sera la profésie
in thee will-be the prophecy
que Sibile dist acomplie.
which Sibyl said fulfilled

Porquoi lairoies à saisir
Why wouldst-thou-leave to seize
ice que Dex te velt largir?
that which God to-thee wishes to-bestow
Essauce toi, essauce nos
Exalt thee exalt us
qui de ce somes curios:
who of this are eager
veraiement dire poon
truly say we-can
que colp ne plaie ne cremon,
that blow nor wound not we-fear
ne mort, ne anui, ne prison,
nor death nor harm nor prison
tant comme nos t'onor querron.
as-long as we thy-bonor shall-seek
Et jo manrai en ta compaigne,
And I shall-lead in thy company
ains que ta besoigne remaigne,
rather than thy need remain
dix mil chevaliers armés.
ten thousand knights armed
Et se tu n'as avoir assés,
And if thou not-hast wealth plenty
tote ma tère engagerai,
all my land I-shall-pledge
l'or et l'argent te liverai;
the-gold and the-silver to-thee I-shall-deliver

jà mar m'en laira un denier
never ill me-thereof will-leave a penny
tant comme en aras mestier.
as-long as thereof thou-wilt-have need
Après la parole Hoël
After the word (of-)Hoel
dist d'Escoce rois Aguisel,
said of-Scotland king Aguisel
frère fu Lot et Urien:
brother he-was (of-)Lot and Urien
sire, fait il, cis nous dist bien;
lord says he this-one us says well
et quant tu ceste cose enprans
and since thou this thing undertakest
parole à cels qui sont caians,
speak to those who are in-here
ù li miax est de ton barnage,
where the best is of thy baronage
et de Rome oent le message.
and of Rome hear the message
Saces que cascuns te fera
Know what each for-thee will-do
et de combien il t'aidera:
and of how-much he thee-will-help
or est mestiers et tans, por voir,
now is need and time for truth
d'aïe et de conseil avoir;
of-aid and of counsel to-have

tot cil qui de ton raine sont
all those who of thy realm are
et qui de toi lor honors ont,
and who from thee their honors have
te doivent aidier et valoir,
thee ought help and avail
si feront il à lor pooir:
so will-do they to their power
je n'oï onques mès novèle
I not-heard ever more news
qui tant sanblast et bone et bèle,
which so-much seemed both good and fair
come de Romains guerroier;
as of Romans warring-on
ainc ne's poi amer, ne proisier:
ever not-them I-could love nor prize
desque je ains rien antendi,
since I first anything understood
Romains et lor orguil haï.
Romans and their pride I-hated
Quel honte de malvaise gent
What shame of wicked folk
qui à nul autre rien n'entent
who to any other thing not-attends
ne mais à avoir amasser,
not but to wealth amass
qui bone gent doit desfier.
who good folk ought defy
Li emperère qui fax fist,
The emperor who false did

et en grant barate se mist
and into great trouble himself put
qui desfiance te manda;
who defiance to-thee sent
encor, ce croi, tex jors sera
yet this I-believe such day will-be
ne la vauroit avoir mandée
not it he-would-wish to-have sent
por ceste tor d'argent rasée.
for this tower of-silver filled
Tel plait ont Romain commencié
Such plea have Romans begun
dont il seront tot corocié;
whereof they will-be all angered
et se il jà ne l' commançaissent
and if they ever not it had-begun
ne il mie ne l' te mandaissent,
nor they at-all not it to-thee had-sent
se's déussons nous commenchier,
so-them ought we begin
et de nostre gré guerroier
and of our will war
por nostre parenté vengier,
for our kindred to-avenge
et por lor orgoil abaissier.
and for their pride to-lower
Qui ce voelent dire et prover
Who this wish to-say and to-prove
que de nous devon treu doner.
that from us we-ought tribute give

Ne quit pas que no ancissor
Not I-think at-all that our ancestors
tréu rendissent ainc as lor;
tribute rendered ever to-the theirs
ne quit pas que cil lor donaissent
not I-think at-all that those to-them gave
ne que cil ainc la demandaissent;
nor that those ever it demanded
onques de lor gré ne l' rendirent
ever of their will not it rendered
mais cil à force lor tolirent.
but those by force from-them took
Et nous à force lor tolon,
And we by force from-them take
nous et nos ancissors venjon.
us and our ancestors avenge
Venqu avon mainte mellée
Won we-have many-a melee
et mainte fort guerre acievée;
and many-a strong war achieved
que valt quanque nous fait avon
what avails all-that we done have
se nous les Romains ne maton?
if we the Romans not checkmate
Onques ne n'oi tel desirier
Ever nor not-I-had such desire
ne de boire, ne de mangier,
nor of drinking nor of eating

comme jo ai de véoir l'ore
as I have of seeing the-hour
que nous nous entrecorons sore;
that we ourselves run-at-each-other upon
sor les cevax, pris les espies,
upon the horses taken the spears
escus levés, hiaumes lacies.
shields raised helms laced
Dex! quels avoirs et quels tresors,
God what wealths and what treasures
se Dex garist de mal nos cors,
if God protects from ill our bodies
auront cil qui avoir valront:
will-have those who to-have will-wish
jamais jor povre ne seront;
ever day poor not they-will-be
là aurons cités et castiax,
there we-shall-have cities and castles
muls et somiers et bons cevax,
mules and packhorses and good horses
ce m'est avis que jo i soie
this to-me-is opinion that I there be
et que jo jà vainqus les voie.
and that I already vanquished them see
Alons, alons Rome conquerre,
Let-us-go let-us-go Rome to-conquer
si tolons as Romains la terre;
so let-us-take from-the Romans the land

quant nos arons Rome conquise
when we shall-have Rome conquered
et la gent venque et ocise,
and the folk vanquished and killed
en Loheraine passeron
into Lorraine we-shall-pass
et tote la terre prandron,
and all the land shall-take
et tous les castiax d'Alemaigne,
and all the castles of-Germany
que nule fieuté n'i remaigne
that any fief not-there remain
jusqu'en la mer qui ne soit toe,
as-far-as the sea which not be thine
n'i a qui de nous la rescoe.
not-there is-one who from us it rescue
Tot prandron à droit et à tort
All we-shall-take with right and with wrong
por que m'oevre à mon dit s'acort,
provided that my-work to my word itself-accord
jo méismes od toi irai
I myself with thee shall-go
et dix mil chevalier menrai;
and ten thousand knights shall-lead
et de l'altre gent tel plenté,
and of the-other folk such plenty
jà par home n'erent nombré.
ever by man not-they-will-be numbered

Quant li rois d'Escoce a parlé
When the king of-Scotland has spoken
tot li altre ont dit et crié:
all the others have said and cried
honis soit en qui remaindra,
shamed be-he in whom it-will-remain
et qui son pooir n'en fera.
and who his power not-thereof will-do
Quant Artur a dit son pensé,
When Arthur has said his thought
et li auquant de son barné,
and the some of his baronage
ses bries fist faire et saieler
his letters he-made make and seal
as messagiers les fist doner,
to-the messengers them he-made give
mult les a tos fais honorer:
much them he-has all made honor
as Romains, fait-il, poés dire
to-the Romans says-he you-can say
que jo sui de Bretaigne sire;
that I am of Britain lord
France tien et si la tendrai
France I-hold and so it shall-hold
et des Romains la desfendrai.
and from-the Romans it shall-defend
Et tant sace vraiement
And so-much let-him-know truly
qu'à Rome irai proçainement,
that-to Rome I-shall-go soon

ne mie por tréu porter,
not at-all for tribute to-carry
mais por tréu d'aus demander.
but for tribute of-them to-demand
Li messagier de lui tornèrent,
The messengers from him turned
à Rome vinrent, si contèrent
to Rome they-came so recounted
où et comment Artur trovèrent,
where and how Arthur they-found
com faitement à lui parlèrent.
how in-manner to him they-spoke
Mult estoient, ce disoient, larges
Very they-were this they-said generous
et prous et enraisniés et sages:
and valiant and well-spoken and wise
nus rois, ce dient, ne poroit
any king this they-say not could
sofrir le cost que il menoit;
bear the cost which he led
tant parert rice sa maisnie
so-much appeared rich his household
et noblement aparillie.
and nobly arrayed
Tréu por noiant li querroient,
Tribute for nothing of-him they-would-seek
car ançois à lui la donroient.
for rather to him it they-would-give

Mais quant li Romain entendirent
But when the Romans heard
que li messagier respondirent,
what the messengers answered
et les cartres qu'il aportèrent
and the charters which-they brought
ou lor paroles s'acordèrent,
where their words themselves-agreed
11325 que jà Artus ne's serviroit,
that ever Arthur not-them would-serve
et que tréu lor requerroit,
and that tribute of-them he-would-demand
à l'emperéor ont loé
to the-emperor they-have advised
et en consel li ont rové
and in counsel him have asked
que tost son empire mandast;
that quickly his empire he-summon
11330 Mont Giu et Borgogne passast,
Mont Joux and Burgundy he-cross
al roi Artus se combatist,
with-the king Arthur himself fight
regne et corone li tolist.
realm and crown from-him take
Licius Yber ne tarda:
Lucius Hiber not delayed
rois et contes et dus manda,
kings and counts and dukes he-summoned

que tot vignent al disme jor
that all come on-the tenth day
si com cascuns aimes s'onor;
just as each loves his-honor
soient à Rome à lui tot prest
be-they at Rome with him all ready
de quere Artur là où il est.
of seeking Arthur there where he is
Cil vinrent delivrément
Those came speedily
qui oïrent le mandement:
who heard the summons
ceus qui vindrent nomerai
those who came I-shall-name
come en l'estoire les trouvai:
as in the-history them I-found
Epistod i vint rois de Gresse,
Epistod there came king of Greece
et Ession rois de Boesse;
and Ession king of Boeotia
Itarc i vint li rois des Turs,
Itarc there came the king of-the Turks
chevaliers ot fors et séurs
knights he-had strong and sure
Pandras i vint li rois de Crète,
Pandras there came the king of Crete
et Ypolite rois de Gète;
and Ypolite king of Geta

cist ert de bien grant signorie
this-one was of very great lordship
qui cent cités ot em baillie.
who hundred cities had in keeping
De Frise i vint rois Evander
From Phrygia there came king Evander
et de Sire rois Theucer.
and of Syria king Teucer
De Babiloine Micipsa
Of Babylon Micipsa
et d'Espaigne Aliphatima.
and of-Spain Aliphatima
De Mede i vint li rois Bocus
Of Media there came the king Bocus
et de Libe Sertorius;
and of Libya Sertorius
de Bitaines Polidetès
of Bithynia Polidetes
et d'Iture li rois Xersès.
and of-Ituraea the king Xerxes
Mustansar qui Aufrique tint,
Mustansar who Africa held
qui loing manoit et de loing vint;
who far dwelt and from far came
Aufriquans amena et Mors,
Africans he-brought and Moors
si amena ses grans trésors.
so brought his great treasures

De cels de l'ordre del séné
Of those of the-order of-the senate
qui en Rome orent dignité,
who in Rome had dignity
vint Marcel et Luces Chatel,
came Marcellus and Lucius Catellus
Cocta, et Gaius et Metel;
Cocta and Gaius and Metellus
autres Barons i ot assés
other Barons there were plenty
dont jo n'ai pas les nons trovés.
whereof I not-have at-all the names found
Quant il furent tot assamblé
When they were all assembled
quatre cent mil furent armé
four hundred thousand were armed
et cent et quatre vint montans,
and hundred and four score amounting
estre la geude des sergans;
besides the foot-folk of-the sergeants
quant prest et aparillée furent,
when ready and prepared they-were
entrant aost de Rome murent.
entering August from Rome they-moved
Artus ot sa cort départie
Arthur had his court dispersed
et as barons ot quis aïe;
and of-the barons had sought aid
tos les sot apelés par nons,
all them he-knew-how called by names

et tos requis et tos somons,
and all asked and all summoned
que il i aient lor pooir
that they there have their power
se il volent s'amor avoir;
if they wish his-love to-have
die qans chevaliers manra
let-him-say how-many knights he-will-lead
cascuns solonc ce qu'il en a;
each according-to that which-he of-them has
Irois, Golandois, Islandois,
Irish Gotlanders Icelanders
Danois, Norois et Orquenois.
Danes Norwegians and Orkneymen
Set vint mil armés ont promis
Seven score thousand armed they-have promised
à la guise de lor païs:
in the guise of their country
n'estoient mie chevalier
not-they-were at-all knights
n'il ne savoient cevalchier;
nor-they not knew-how to-ride
tot à pié portoient lor armes,
all on foot carried their arms
lances, gaverlos et gisarmes.
lances javelins and gisarmes
Cil de Normandie et d'Angou,
Those of Normandy and of-Anjou
cil d'Auvergne et de Poitou;
those of-Auvergne and of Poitou

cil de Flandres, cil de Bologne,
those of Flanders those of Boulogne
od totes armes, sans essogne;
with all arms without excuse
quatre vint mil armés pramisent
four score thousand armed they-promised
de tant doivent servir, ce disent.
of so-much they-ought serve this they-say
Douse contes de grant puiçance,
Twelve counts of great puissance
que l'on apeloit pers de France,
whom one called peers of France
qui od Gérin de Cartres furent,
who with Gerin of Chartres were
de douze cent le nombre crurent:
of twelve hundred the number they-increased
cascuns cent chevaliers pramist,
each hundred knights promised
de tant devoit servir, ce dist.
of so-much he-ought serve this he-said
Dis milliers en pramist Hoel,
Ten thousands thereof promised Hoel
dels milliers li quens Aguisel.
two thousands the count Aguisel
De Bretaigne sa propre terre
Of Britain his own land
que nous apelon Angleterre,
which we call England

fist Artus nombrer chevaliers
made Arthur number knights
à haubers, quarante milliers.
with hauberks forty thousands
La geude, les arbalestriers,
The foot-folk the crossbowmen
ne les sergans, ne les archiers
nor the sergeants nor the archers
ne sai nombrer ne cil n'i firent
not I-know-how number nor those not-there did
qui le grant ost assamblé virent.
who the great host assembled saw
Quant Artus sot quel gent aroit
When Arthur knew what folk he-would-have
et qans armés cascuns menroit,
and how-many armed each would-lead
à cascun rova et bani
to each he-asked and proclaimed
al termine qu'il establi,
at-the term which-he established
venist cascuns à son navie,
let-come each to his fleet
à Barbefloe, en Normandie.
at Barfleur in Normandy
Quant li Baron orent congié,
When the Barons had leave
en lor tere sont repairié,
into their land they-are returned

lor homes firent aprester
their men they-made make-ready
cels qui durent od els mener.
those whom they-ought with them lead
Com Artus fu apareillies
When Arthur was prepared
si n'est mie plus atargies.
so not-be-is at-all more delayed

The Crossing, and the Giant of the Mount

IX

Arthur leaves his realm and Queen Guinevere to Mordred, who loves her in secret, and sails from Southampton; the seamen work the sails, and at sea Arthur dreams of a bear and a dragon fighting, which he reads as his war with the emperor. At Barfleur he hears that a giant from Spain has carried Helen, Hoel's niece, to the mount now called Saint-Michel. Bedivere crosses to the smaller mount and finds her old nurse weeping by her tomb, kept by the giant for his lust. Arthur climbs the greater mount with Kay and Bedivere and kills the giant Dinabuc alone, with Excalibur in his brain, and says he met none stronger but Riton, who made cloaks of kings' beards. Bedivere cuts off the head for the host to see.

A Mordret, un de ses nevos, 11425
To Mordred one of his nephews
chevalier prou et mervillos,
knight valiant and marvelous
livra en garde Artur son règne
delivered in keeping Arthur his realm
et dame Genievre sa fenne.
and lady Guinevere his wife

Mordrès estoit de grant nobloi,
Mordred was of great nobility
mais n'avoit mie bonne foi;
but not-had at-all good faith
Genievre estoit sa seror
Guinevere was his sister
mais il lui fist grant deshonor.
but he to-her did great dishonor
Il avoit la roïne amée,
He had the queen loved
mais ce estoit cose celée;
but this was thing hidden
il s'en celoit, mais qui quidast
he himself-thereof hid but who would-have-thought
que il la feme son oncle amast?
that he the wife (of-)his uncle loved
Méesmement de tel signor
Especially of such lord
dont tot li sien orent honor,
whereof all the his-own had honor
feme son oncle par putage,
wife (of-)his uncle by whoredom
ama Mordrès, si fist hontage.
loved Mordred so did shame
A Mordret et à la roïne
To Mordred and to the queen
Dex, tel mal fist cele saisine!
God such harm did that seisin
Commanda tot, fors la corone,
He-committed all except the crown

puis vint passer à Suthantone.
then came to-cross at Southampton
Là furent les nés amenées
There were the ships brought
et les maisnies asamblées;
and the households assembled
mult véissiez nès atorner,
much you-might-see ships fit-out
nès atachier, nès aencrer,
ships moor ships anchor
nès atachier, et nès floter,
ships moor and ships float
nès chevillier, et nès cloer.
ships peg and ships nail
Là véissiés ces mas derchier
There you-might-see these masts raise
et ces pons metre, nés cargier;
and these gangways put ships load
lances derchier, cevax tirer,
lances raise horses pull
chevaliers et sergans entrer.
knights and sergeants enter
Mult se vont entre saluant
Much themselves go each-other greeting
cil qui vont et li remanant.
those who go and the remaining
Quant tot furent es nés entré
When all were in-the ships entered
et vent orent et bon oré,
and wind they-had and good breeze

donc véissiés ancres lever,
then you-might-see anchors raise
estrans trère, hobans fermer.
stays draw shrouds fasten
Mariniers sallent par ces nés
Mariners leap through these ships
et desplient voiles et très;
and unfold sails and canvases
li un s'esforcent al vindas,
the ones themselves-strain at-the windlass
li autre al lof et al betas.
the others at-the luff and at-the boom
Les sigles vuident sus à mont,
The sails they-loose up on high
puis vont corant en mer parfont;
then go running into sea deep
les cordes sunt en lor lieu mises
the ropes are in their place put
et fremées et bien asises.
and fastened and well set
Detries sont li governéor
Behind are the steersmen
et des estirmans li millor;
and of-the helmsmen the best
cascuns de maistrier se paine
each of mastering himself strives
li gouvernax qui la nef maine.
the rudder which the ship leads
Avant le hel si cort senestre,
Forward the helm so it-runs left

an sus le hel por corre destre;
away up the helm for to-run right
por le vant ès trés acoillir
for the wind in-the sails to-catch
font les privez avant tenir;
they-make the tacks forward hold
et bien fermer es raelingues.
and well fasten in-the bolt-ropes
Tebo i a, traient les gurdingues
Some there are they-draw the brails
et auquant abeissent lor tref
and some lower their sail
por la nef corre plus soef.
for the ship to-run more gently
Estuins ferment et escotes
Stays they-fasten and sheets
et font tandre la cordes totes;
and make tighten the ropes all
utagues laschent, très avalent,
halyards they-slacken sails lower
boelines sachent et halent.
bowlines they-pull and haul
Al vent gardent et as estoiles,
To-the wind they-look and to-the stars
selonc l'oré portent lor voiles.
according-to the-breeze they-carry their sails
Les braiols font lacier as mast
The brails they-make lace to-the mast
que li vanz par desoz ne past;
that the wind by beneath not pass

à deus rams orent ou à trois.
with two reefs they-had or with three
Mult fu hardis, mult fu cortois
Very was bold very was courteous
cil qui nés fist premièrement
that-one who ships made first
et en mer se mist od le vent,
and into sea himself put with the wind
terre querre qu'il ne véoit,
land to-seek which-he not saw
et rivage qu'il ne savoit.
and shore which-he not knew
Li gent Artur à joie aloient,
The folk (of-)Arthur with joy went
bon vent avoient, bien sigloient,
good wind they-had well they-sailed
à mie nuit par mer coroient,
at mid night through sea they-ran
vers Barbeflue lor cors tenoient;
toward Barfleur their course they-held
et Artus prist à somillier,
and Arthur began to slumber
endormi soi, ne pot vellier.
fell-asleep himself not could wake
Vis li fu, là où il dormoit,
Seeming to-him it-was there where he slept
que en haut l'air un ors avoit,
that in high the-air a bear there-was
devers oriant avolant,
from-toward east flying

qui mult avoit lait cors et grant,
which very had ugly body and great
mult estoit d'orible façon.
very it-was of-horrible fashion
D'autre part avoit un dragon
On-other side there-was a dragon
qui devers ocidant voloit,
which from-toward west flew
et de ses eles flambe jetoit;
and from its wings flame cast
de lui et de sa resplendor
from it and from its splendor
luisoit terre et li mer entor.
shone land and the sea around
Li dragons l'ours envaïssoit
The dragon the-bear attacked
et il forment se desfendoit;
and it strongly itself defended
mais li dragons l'ours enversoit,
but the dragon the-bear overturned
et à terre le craventoit.
and to earth it struck-down
Quant Artus ot un poi dormi
When Arthur had a little slept
del songe qu'il vit s'esperi,
from-the dream which-he saw himself-awoke
esvilla soi, si se dreça:
woke himself so himself raised

as clers et as Bretons conta
to-the clerks and to-the Britons he-told
tot en ordre la vision
all in order the vision
qu'il vit de l'ours et del dragon.
which-he saw of the-bear and of-the dragon
Alquant d'aus li ont respondu
Some of-them to-him have answered
que li dragons qu'il ot véu
that the dragon which-he had seen
estoit de lui sénéfiance,
was of him signification
et li ors estoit demostrance
and the bear was showing
d'aucuns gaiant qu'il ociroit,
of-some giant whom-he would-kill
qui d'estrange terre venroit;
who from-foreign land would-come
li altre d'autre guise esponent,
the others in-other guise expound
nequedant tot à bien li tornent:
nevertheless all to good for-him they-turn
ains est, dist-il, ce m'est viaire,
rather it-is said-he this to-me-is seeming
la guerre que nous devons faire
the war which we ought make
entre moi et l'emperéor,
between me and the-emperor
mais del tot soit el criator.
but of-the all be-it in-the Creator

A ces paroles ajorna,
At these words it-dawned
et li solax matin leva.
and the sun early rose
Al port vinrent assés matin
To-the port they-came quite early
à Barbefloe, en Costentin.
at Barfleur in Cotentin
Isnelement des nés issirent,
Quickly from-the ships they-went-out
par la contrée s'espandirent;
through the country themselves-spread
ses gens a Artus atendues
his folk has Arthur awaited
qui n'erent pas encor venues.
who not-were at-all yet come
N'avoit mie mult atandu
Not-he-had at-all much waited
quant il oï et dit li fu
when he heard and told to-him it-was
que uns gaians mult corporus
that a giant very big-bodied
ert devers Espaigne venus;
was from-toward Spain come
nièce Hoël Hélaine ot prise,
niece (of-)Hoel Helen he-had taken
ravie l'ot, el mont l'ot mise
ravished her-he-had on-the mount her-had put
que l'on or Saint Miciel apèle;
which one now Saint Michael calls

n'i avoit mostier, ne capèle,
not-there was minster nor chapel
del fluet del mer montant ert clos.
by-the flood of-the sea rising it-was closed
N'avoit home el païs si os,
Not-there-was man in-the country so bold
ne bacelier, ne païsant
nor young-knight nor peasant
si orgillos, ne si prisant,
so proud nor so worthy
qui s'osast al gaiant combatre,
who himself-dared with-the giant fight
ne là où il estoit embatre.
nor there where he was thrust
Quant cil del païs s'asambloient,
When those of-the country themselves-assembled
et por combatre al mont aloient
and for to-fight to-the mount went
souvent par mer et par la terre,
often by sea and by the land
ne li ert gaires de lour guerre:
not to-him was much of their war
à roces lor nés dépeçoit,
with rocks their ships he-shattered
tos les ocioit et noioit.
all them he-killed and drowned
Tuit l'avoient laié ester,
All it-had left be
ne l'osoient mais abiter.
nor it-dared more inhabit

Mult véissiés as païsans
Much you-might-see of-the peasants
maisons vuidier, porter enfans,
houses empty carry children
femes mener, bestes cachier,
women lead beasts drive
ès mons monter, es bois muchier.
onto-the mountains climb in-the woods hide
Par bois et par désers fuioient,
Through woods and through deserts they-fled
et encor là morir quidoient.
and even there die they-thought
Toute estoit la terre guerpie,
All was the land forsaken
toute s'en ert la gent fuïe.
all itself-thence was the folk fled
Li jaians ot non Dinabuc
The giant had name Dinabuc
que puisse prendre mal trebuc:
whom may take evil fall
quant Artus en oï parler,
when Arthur thereof heard speak
Kex apela et Beduier,
Kay he-called and Bedivere
ses senescax fut li premiers
his seneschal was the first
et li autres ses botilliers;
and the other his butler
ne vaut parler à nul altre home.
not he-wished to-speak to any other man

Cele nuit s'em part de prinsome;
That night himself-thence parts at first-sleep
ne voloit ost od soi mener,
not he-wished host with himself to-lead
ne cist afaire à toz monstrer;
nor this affair to all to-show
ne quidoit se il le séussent,
not he-thought if they it knew
que del jaiant pooir éussent.
that over-the giant power they-had
Et il ert tex et tant valoit
And he was such and so-much was-worth
qu'à lui destruire sofissoit.
that-for him to-destroy he-sufficed
Tote nuit ont tant cevalcié
All night they-have so-much ridden
et esperoné et brocié,
and spurred and pricked
par matin vinrent al rivage,
by morning they-came to-the shore
là ou il virent le passage;
there where they saw the passage
sor le mont virent fu ardoir,
on the mount they-saw fire burn
de loin li pooit on véoir,
from far it could one see
un altre mont i ot menour
an other mount there was smaller
qui n'ert mie loins del grignour.
which not-was at-all far from-the greater

En cascuns avoit fu ardant;
On each there-was fire burning
por ce aloit Artus dotant
for this went Arthur doubting
en quel lius li gaians estoit,
in which place the giant was
et el quel mont le troveroit;
and on-the which mount him he-would-find
n'i ot qui dire li séust,
not-there was-one who say him could
ne qui le jor véu l'éust.
nor who the day seen him-had
A Bedoer dist qu'il alast
To Bedivere he-said that-he go
et l'un et l'autre mont cherqast,
and the-one and the-other mount search
tant le quérist qu'il le trovast,
so-long him seek that-he him find
et puis venist, si li nonçast.
and then come so to-him announce
Cil est en un batel entrés,
That-one is into a boat entered
al plus proçain mont est alés,
to-the most near mount is gone
n'i pooit altrement aler,
not-there he-could otherwise go
car plains estoit li flos de mer.
for full was the flood of sea

Com fu venus al mont proçain
When he-was come to-the mount near
et il montoit le halt terrain,
and he climbed the high ground
si com il ot le mont monté
just as he had the mount climbed
un seul petit a escouté:
a single little he-has listened
el mont oï grans ploréis
on-the mount he-heard great weeping
et grans sospirs et mult hals cris;
and great sighs and very high cries
paor ot, si prist à frémir,
fear he-had so began to tremble
car le gaiant cuida oïr.
for the giant he-thought to-hear
Mais semprès se raséura,
But straightway himself reassured
s'espée traist, avant ala.
his-sword he-drew forward went
Recovré ot son hardiment,
Recovered he-had his boldness
en pensé ot et en talent
in thought he-had and in desire
que al gaiant se combatroit,
that with-the giant himself he-would-fight
en aventure se metroit,
in adventure himself would-put

et dist que por perdre la vie
and said that for losing the life
ne vouroit faire couardie.
not he-would-wish to-do cowardice
Mais cel pensé ot il en vain,
But that thought had he in vain
qar qant il vint sus al terrain,
for when he came up to-the ground
un feu ardant vit solement
a fire burning he-saw only
et un tombel fait novelment,
and a tomb made newly
la tombe estoit novelment faite.
the tomb was newly made
Li quens i vint l'espée traite,
The count there came the-sword drawn
une vielle feme a trovée,
an old woman he-has found
ses dras desrons, escavelée;
her clothes torn disheveled
dejoste le tombel gisoit,
beside the tomb she-lay
mult se plaignoit et dol menoit;
much herself lamented and grief made
Helaine souvent regretoit,
Helen often mourned
grant doeil faisoit, grant cris jetoit.
great grief made great cries cast
Qant ele a Beduier véu:
When she has Bedivere seen

caitis, fait-ele, qui es tu?
wretch says-she who art thou
Quels mesaventure te maine?
What misadventure thee leads
A honte, à dolour et à paine
With shame with grief and with pain
t'estuet hui ta vie finer,
thee-behooves today thy life to-end
se li gaians te puet trover.
if the giant thee can find
Maleureus, fui, tien ta voie
Unfortunate flee hold thy way
ançois que li gaians te voie;
before that the giant thee see
car s'il te voi, jà i morras,
for if-he thee sees at-once there thou-wilt-die
jà de la mort n'escaperas.
ever from the death not-thou-wilt-escape
Bone fame, dist Bedoer,
Good woman said Bedivere
parole à moi, lai le plorer,
speak to me leave the weeping
di moi qui es, et por qoi plores?
tell me who thou-art and for what weepest
En ceste ille porqoi demores?
In this isle why dwellest
Qui gist en ceste sépulture?
Who lies in this sepulcher
Conte moi tote t'aventure.
Tell me all thy-adventure

Jo sui, dist-ele, une esgarée,
I am said-she a lost-one
une lasse maléurée,
a wretched unfortunate
ci plor por une damisele
here I-weep for a damsel
que jo norri à ma mamele;
whom I nursed at my breast
Helaine ot non, nièce Hoel,
Helen she-had name niece (of-)Hoel
ci gist li cors en cest tombel.
here lies the body in this tomb
A norir me fu commandée;
To nurse to-me she-was entrusted
lasse! por coi me fu livrée?
alas for what to-me she-was delivered
Lasse! por coi l'ai je norrie,
Alas for what her-have I nursed
quant uns déables l'a ravie!
when a devil her-has ravished
Uns gaians moi et li ravi
A giant me and her ravished
et moi et li aporta ci:
and me and her brought here
la pucele valt por gésir,
the maiden he-wished for to-lie-with
mais tendre fu, ne l' pot soffrir:
but tender she-was not it could endure
ele fu jouene et il fu grans,
she was young and he was big

les os avoit gros et pesans;
the bones he-had big and heavy
ne l' pot Elaine sostenir,
not it could Helen sustain
l'ame li fist del cors partir.
the-soul to-her he-made from-the body part
Lasse! caitive, ma dolcor,
Alas wretched my sweetness
ma joie, mon déduit, m'amour
my joy my delight my-love
a li gaians à honte ocise,
has the giant with shame killed
et jo l'ai ci en terre mise.
and I her-have here in earth put
Por coi, dist li quens, ne t'en vas,
For what said the count not thee-thence goest
quant tu Hélaine perdu as?
since thou Helen lost hast
Vels tu, dist-ele, oïr por coi?
Wilt thou said-she hear for what
Gentil home et cortois te voi,
Noble man and courteous thee I-see
por ce ne t'en ferai celée:
for this not to-thee-thereof I-shall-make concealment
quant Elaine fut deviée
when Helen was departed
que il féist à honte morir
whom he made with shame die
dont je quidai del sens issir,
whereof I thought from-the sense to-go-out

morir la vi à grant dolour,
die her I-saw with great grief
dont j'ai au cuer mult grant irour,
whereof I-have at-the heart very great anger
li gaians me fist ci remaindre
the giant me made here remain
por sa luxure en moi refraindre;
for his lust in me to-restrain
par force m'a ci retenue, 11685
by force me-he-has here retained
et par force m'a porjéue.
and by force me-he-has lain-with
Sa force m'estuet otroier,
His force me-behooves to-grant
ne li puis mie desforchier;
not to-him I-can at-all resist
ne le fas mie de mon gré,
not it I-do at-all of my will
mais encontre ma volenté; 11690
but against my will
petit s'an falt qu'il ne m'a morte,
little itself-thereof lacks that-he not me-has killed
mais plus sui vielle plus sui forte,
but more I-am old more I-am strong
et plus sui grant, et plus sui dure,
and more I-am big and more I-am hard
et plus sui forte, et plus sui seure
and more I-am strong and more I-am sure
que ne fu damoisele Hélaine. 11695
than not was damsel Helen

Et nomporoc, s'en ai grant paine,
And nevertheless so-thereof I-have great pain
trestot li cors de moi s'en delt;
all the body of me itself-thereof grieves
et s'il vient ça, si com il selt,
and if-he comes here just as he is-wont
por sa luxure refrener
for his lust to-curb
ocis sera, sans demorer.
killed he-will-be without delay
Là sus est en cel mont qi fume,
There up he-is on that mount which smokes
s'emprès venra, c'est sa coustume;
so-straightway he-will-come it-is his custom
fui t'en, amis, q'as tu ci quis?
flee thee-thence friend what-hast thou here sought
Que tu ne soies entrepris.
That thou not be seized
Lai moi plorer et faire doel,
Let me weep and make grief
morte fuisse pieça mon voel,
dead I-would-be long-since my will
mar vi d'Elaine l'amistie.
ill I-saw of-Helen the-friendship
Dont en ot Beduier pitié;
Then thereof had Bedivere pity
mult doucement la conforta,
very gently her comforted
dont la guerpi, si s'entorna.
then her he-left so himself-turned-away

Al roi vint, si li a conté
To-the king he-came so to-him has told
ce qu'il a oï et trové;
that which-he has heard and found
de la vielle qui doel faisoit,
of the old-woman who grief made
et d'Elaine qui morte estoit,
and of-Helen who dead was
et del gaiant qui conversoit
and of-the giant who dwelt
en cel plus grant mont qui fumoit.
on that more great mount which smoked
D'Elaine fu Artus dolans,
For-Helen was Arthur grieved
mais ne fu pas coars, ne lans.
but not he-was at-all coward nor slow
Al flos retraiant de la mer
At-the flood withdrawing of the sea
a fait ses compaignons armer;
he-has made his companions arm
a forçor mont vinrent tantost
to-the greater mount they-came at-once
comme la mer le mont desclost,
as the sea the mount uncloses
lor palefrois et lor desfers
their palfreys and their destriers
commandèrent as escuiers.
they-entrusted to-the squires
Contre mont sunt alé tot troi,
Up mount are gone all three

Artus et Beduier et Koi:
Arthur and Bedivere and Kay
je irai, dist Artus, avant,
I shall-go said Arthur before
si me combatrai al gaiant,
so myself shall-fight with-the giant
vous venrés après moi, arière;
you will-come after me behind
mais gardés bien que nus n'i fière
but take-care well that anyone not-there strike
tant com je me porai aidier,
as-long as I myself shall-be-able help
non jà, se jo n'en ai mestier,
not ever if I not-thereof have need
por moi aider ne vous mouvés,
for me to-help not you move
se grant essoine ne véés;
if great need not you-see
coardie resambleroit
cowardice it-would-seem
se nus fors moi s'i combatoit;
if anyone except me himself-there fought
et nonporquant, se vous véés
and nevertheless if you see
mon besoing, si me socorés.
my need so me succor
Cil ont ce qu'il dit otroié,
Those have that which-he says granted
puis ont tot trois le mont puié.
then have all three the mount climbed

Li gaians al fu se séoit,
The giant at-the fire himself sat
et car de porc i rostissoit:
and meat of pork there roasted
en espoi en quisoit partie
on spit thereof he-cooked part
et partie en carbon rostie;
and part on coal roasted
la barbe avoit et les guernons
the beard he-had and the mustaches
soillies de cendre et de carbons.
soiled with ash and with coals
Artus le quida ains sosprandre,
Arthur him thought first to-surprise
qu'il péust sa maçue prendre,
before-he could his club take
mais li gaians Artur coisi,
but the giant Arthur spied
merveilla soi, en piés sailli,
marveled himself onto feet leapt
sa maçue a al col levée
his club he-has to-the neck raised
qui mult estoit grosse et qarée;
which very was big and squared
dui païsant ne la portaissent,
two peasants not it could-carry
et de terre ne la levaissent.
and from earth not it could-lift
Artus le vit en piés ester,
Arthur him saw on feet stand

et de férir bien aprester;
and of striking well make-ready
s'espée tint, l'escu leva,
his-sword he-held the-shield raised
encontre le colp qu'il dota;
against the blow which-he feared
et li gaians tel li dona
and the giant such to-him gave
que tos li mons en résona
that all the mount thereof resounded
et Artus tout en estona,
and Arthur all thereof was-stunned
mais fors fu, point ne cancela.
but strong he-was not-at-all not staggered
Artus senti le cop pesant;
Arthur felt the blow heavy
s'espée tint, leva le branc,
his-sword he-held raised the blade
l'escu fu del cop empiriés,
the-shield was by-the blow damaged
li rois le voit, mult fu iriés.
the king it sees very he-was angered
Le bras hauça et estendi,
The arm he-raised and stretched
le gaiant sus el front féri.
the giant up on-the forehead he-struck
Les deus sorcils li entama,
The two eyebrows of-him he-gashed
li sans el front li avala;
the blood on-the forehead to-him ran-down

à icel colp ocis l'éust,
with that blow killed him-he-would-have
jà recovrier n'i esteust;
ever recovery not-there would-have-been-needed
quant li gaians a la maçue
when the giant has the club
contre le colp en haut tenue.
against the blow on high held
Guenci le cief, et bien estut, 11775
He-swerved the head and well stood
et nequedant tel cop reçut
and nevertheless such blow received
que tout le vis ensanglenta,
that all the face bloodied
et la véue li torbla.
and the sight to-him clouded
Quant il senti ses elx troublés
When he felt his eyes troubled
dont fu esragiés et dervés: 11780
then he-was enraged and maddened
comme sanglés féru d'espie,
like boar struck with-spear
que li cien ont assés cacie,
which the dogs have plenty chased
s'enbat contre le venéor,
himself-hurls against the huntsman
tot ensement, par grant iror,
all likewise with great wrath
corut al roi si l'embraça, 11785
he-ran to-the king so him-embraced

ainc por l'espée ne l' laisa;
ever for the-sword not him left
grans fu, parmi le cors le prist,
big he-was through the body him took
à jenoillons venir le fist;
to knees come him he-made
mais Artus se resvigora,
but Arthur himself reinvigorated
en piés revint, si se dreça.
to feet came-back so himself raised
Artus fu forment aïrous,
Arthur was greatly wrathful
et merveilles engignous,
and marvelously cunning
coreciés fu et paor ot.
angered he-was and fear had
Si s'esforça, tant com il pot,
So himself-strove as-much as he could
à soi traist, et de soi s'enpainst,
to himself drew and from himself himself-thrust
grant vertu ot, point ne se fainst;
great strength he-had not-at-all not himself held-back
en saillant, guenci de travers
in leaping he-swerved from aside
de l'anemi s'est désaërs;
from the-enemy himself-is loosed
par grant vertu li escapa,
by great strength from-him escaped
ainc puis li jaians ne l' hapa.
ever after the giant not him grabbed

Dès qu'il se fu de lui estors,
As-soon-as that-he himself was from him wrenched
et délivré senti son cors,
and free felt his body
mult fu isniax, entor ala,
very he-was swift around he-went
or ert de ça, or ert de là,
now he-was on this-side now he-was on that-side
od l'espée souvent ferrant.
with the-sword often striking
Et cil aloit as mains tastant;
And that-one went with-the hands groping
les els avoit si plains de sanc
the eyes he-had so full of blood
qu'il ne véoit ne noir ne blanc.
that-he not saw neither black nor white
Tant aloit Artus guencisant,
So-much went Arthur dodging
souvent derière, souvent devant,
often behind often before
que d'Escalibor l'alemele
that of-Excalibur the-blade
lui embati en la cervele,
to-him he-thrust into the brain
traist et empainst, et cil caï;
he-drew and thrust and that-one fell
par angoisse jetta un cri.
through anguish cast a cry
Tel escrois fist al caïement,
Such crash he-made at-the falling

comme chaisnes qui ciet par vent.
as oak which falls by wind
Dont commença Artus à rire;
Then began Arthur to laugh
adons fu trepassée s'ire,
then was passed his-wrath
de loins estut, si l'esgarda.
from afar he-stood so him-looked-at
A son bouteiller commanda
To his butler he-commanded
qu'al gaiant le cief trençast,
that-from-the giant the head he-cut
et as escuiers le livrast
and to-the squires it deliver
et à l'ost la face porter,
and to the-host it make carry
pour faire à mervelle agarder.
for to-make as marvel be-looked-at
Chil a fait son commandement;
He has done his command
l'espée trait, le cief en print;
the-sword he-draws the head thereof took
merveilles fu la teste grant
marvelous was the head big
et hideuse de cel jaiant:
and hideous of that giant
éu, ai dist Artus, paor,
had I-have said Arthur fear

ainc mais n'oï de gaiant forçor
ever more not-I-heard of giant stronger
fors de Riton tant solement
except of Riton so only
qui maint roi avoit fait dolent.
who many-a king had made grieving
Riton avoit tant roi conquis
Riton had so-many kings conquered
et venqu et ocis et pris,
and vanquished and killed and taken
de lor barbes q'ot escorciés
of their beards which-he-had flayed
ot unes piax aparilliés;
he-had some furs made-ready
piax en ot fait à afubler,
furs thereof he-had made to wear
mult devoit on Riton doter.
much ought one Riton fear
Par grant orgoil et par fierté,
By great pride and by fierceness
avoit al roi Artus mandé
he-had to-the king Arthur sent-word
que la siue barbe escorçast
that the his-own beard he-flay
et bonement li envoiast;
and willingly to-him send
et si com il plus fors estoit,
and just as he more strong was
et il plus des altres valoit,
and he more than-the others was-worth

la soie barbe onoerroit,
the his-own beard he-would-honor
et à ses piax orlé feroit.
and to his furs border would-make
Et se Artus contredisoit
And if Arthur gainsaid
ce que Riton li requerroit,
that which Riton of-him demanded
cors à cors ensamble venissent,
body to body together they-should-come
et sol à sol se combatissent;
and alone to alone themselves fight
et li quels qui l'autre ociroit
and the which who the-other would-kill
ou qui vif vaincre le poroit,
or who alive conquer him could
la barbe éust, préist les piax
the beard let-him-have take the furs
et féist un orlé et tassiax.
and make a border and tassels
Artus à lui se conbati
Arthur with him himself fought
el mont d'Araive si l' venqui;
on-the mount of-Araive so him conquered
les piax et la barbe escorça,
the furs and the beard he-flayed
onques puis Artus ne rova
ever after Arthur not sought
gaiant qui fust d'itel valor
giant who were of-such valor

ne dont il éust tel paor.
nor whereof he had such fear

Mais icist mult plus fort estoit,
But this-one much more strong was

et mult graingnor vigor avoit
and much greater vigor had

que onques Riton n'en ost jor,
than ever Riton not-thereof had day

quant il fust de graingnor vigor,
when he was of greater vigor

et plus oribles et plus laiz,
and more horrible and more ugly

plus hisdos et plus contrefaiz,
more hideous and more deformed

au jor que Artur le conquist
on-the day that Arthur him conquered

el mont St Michel où l'ocist.
on-the mount Saint Michael where him-he-killed

The Embassy to Lucius

X

Arthur marches through France toward Autun, builds a small castle on the Aube, and sends Gawain, Gerin of Chartres, and Bos of Oxford to tell Lucius to leave France or fight for it. When Quintilian, the emperor's nephew, sneers at the Britons, Gawain strikes off his head, and the three ride off, turning to kill the first Romans who reach them; Gawain splits Marcellus to the shoulders, and they come to a wood where six thousand of Arthur's knights wait. Peredur brings ten thousand Romans and drives the Britons back to the wood; Yder son of Nut comes with seven thousand more, and Bos, seeing that Peredur holds the Romans together, gathers the boldest to take him alive or dead.

Quant Artus a le monstre ocis
When Arthur has the monster killed
et Beduier a le cief pris,
and Bedivere has the head taken
joios d'iloc s'en retornèrent,
joyful from-there themselves-thence returned
à l'ost vinrent, si s'atornèrent,
to the-host they-came so themselves-prepared
et content là il ont esté
and tell where they have been
et ont à tos le cief mostré.
and have to all the head shown
Hoel fu dolans de sa nièce
Hoel was grieved for his niece
et mult en fu triste grant pièce,
and much thereof was sad great while
por ce que si estoit périe.
for this that so she-was perished

De ma dame Sainte Marie
Of my lady Saint Mary
fist faire el mont une capele
he-made make on-the mount a chapel
que l'on or Tombe Elaine apele,
which one now Tomb Helen calls
por Elaine qui iloc jut
for Helen who there lay
Tombe Elaine cest non reçut.
Tomb Helen this name received
Or vous lairai de ce ester
Now you I-shall-leave of this be
de l'ost vourai avant conter.
of the-host I-shall-wish forward to-tell
Quant cil d'Irlande là tos furent
When those of-Ireland there all were
et li autre qui venir durent,
and the others who come ought
Artur de jornée en jornée
Arthur from day's-march to day's-march
a Normandie trespassée;
has Normandy crossed
trespassa s'en tot parmi France,
crossed himself-thence all through France
à tot son ost, sans demorance,
with all his host without delay
que il menoit en sa besoigne
which he led in his need
et en vint tantost en Borgogne.
and thence came at-once into Burgundy

Droit à Ostun voloit aler,
Straight to Autun he-wished to-go
car oï avoit noveler
for heard he-had report
que Romain là aler voloient
that Romans there to-go wished
qui la contrée destruiroient.
who the country would-destroy
Luces uns ber les conduisoit
Lucius a baron them led
qui de Rome l'empire avoit.
who of Rome the-empire had
Quant Artus dut l'éve passer
When Arthur was-to the-water cross
que vous oés Aube nommer;
which you hear Aube named
li païsant li anonchièrent,
the peasants to-him announced
ses espies li acointièrent,
his spies to-him made-known
que près d'iloc, se il voloit,
that near from-there if he wished
l'emperéor trover poroit;
the-emperor find he-could
ses herberges et ses foillies
his lodgings and his bowers
avoit bien près d'iloc ficies;
he-had very near from-there pitched

tant avoit gent, mervelle estoit
so-much he-had folk marvel it-was
comment terre les sostenoit:
how earth them sustained
jà sa gent n'i foisoneroit,
ever his folk not-there would-suffice
contre un des siens quatre en avoit.
against one of-the his-own four of-them he-had
Artus noiant ne s'esmaia,
Arthur at-all not himself-dismayed
hardis fu, en Deu s'afia;
bold he-was in God himself-trusted
oï avoit mainte manace.
heard he-had many-a threat
Sor Aube en une forte place
On Aube in a strong place
a un castellet compassé,
he-has a small-castle designed
grant gent avoit, tot l'a fermé.
great folk he-had all it-has closed
Le castelet dedens ferma,
The small-castle within he-closed
tos ses barons dedens laia,
all his barons within he-left
et ses grans forces li croissoit,
and his great forces to-him grew
al castelet repaierroit.
to-the small-castle he-would-return

Dont a deus contes apelés
Then he-has two counts called
qu'il tenoit à bien emparlés,
whom-he held for well spoken
de grant parage fu cascuns:
of great parentage was each
Gerins de Chartres fu li uns,
Gerin of Chartres was the one
li autres Bos d'Osenefort
the other Bos of-Oxford
qui bien connut et droit et tort.
who well knew both right and wrong
A ses deus a Gauvain josté
To these two he-has Gawain joined
qui à Rome ot lonc tans esté,
who at Rome had long time been
por ce qu'il erent bien prisié
for this that-they were well esteemed
bien honoré, et ensagnié.
well honored and instructed
A li rois cés ensamble pris
Has the king these together taken
et à l'emperéor tramis:
and to the-emperor sent
manda li que s'en retornast,
he-sent-word to-him that himself-thence he-return
France estoit soie, n'i entrast.
France was his not-there let-him-enter
S'il ne s'en voloit retorner,
If-he not himself-thence wished to-return

par bataille venist prover
by battle let-him-come to-prove
al primerain jor qui vendroit
on-the first day which would-come
li quels i ara millor droit;
the which there will-have better right
car Artus, tant com il vivroit,
for Arthur as-long as he would-live
France des Romains desfendroit.
France from-the Romans would-defend
Par bataille l'avoit conquise
By battle it-he-had conquered
et par bataille l'avoit prise,
and by battle it-he-had taken
et Romain ancienement
and Romans anciently
l'orent par bataille ensement;
it-had by battle likewise
or en soit bataille provance
now thereof be battle proof
li quels d'aus deus doit avoir France.
the which of-them two ought have France
Li messagier s'en retornèrent;
The messengers themselves-thence returned
sor lor millor cevax montèrent,
on their best horses they-mounted
escus saisis, helmes laciés,
shields seized helms laced
haubers vestus et pris espiés.
hauberks donned and taken spears

Dont véissiés maint chevalier
Then you-might-see many-a knight
et maint vallet prou et légier
and many-a youth valiant and nimble
qui à Gauvain vont consillant
who to Gawain go counseling
et à consel li vont mostrant,
and in counsel to-him go showing
que là où il va, à la cort,
that there where he goes to the court
face tel cose, ains qu'il s'en tort,
he-do such thing before that-he himself-thence turn
que la guerre soit commencie
that the war be begun
qui tant a esté manacie:
which so-long has been threatened
torné seroit à malvaistie
turned it-would-be to baseness
quant il tant se sont aprocié,
since they so-much themselves are approached
s'aucune cause n'en féissent,
if-some cause not-thereof they-made
ançois que il s'en départissent;
before that they themselves-thence departed
et cil dient que si feront,
and those say that so they-will-do
la bataille commenceront.
the battle they-will-begin
Cil passèrent une montaigne,
Those crossed a mountain

et puis un broil lès une plaigne:
and then a thicket beside a plain
les herberges virent de l'ost
the lodgings they-saw of the-host
et il vinrent assés tost.
and they came quite soon
Dont véissiés Romains venir,
Then you-might-see Romans come
et chevaliers des trés issir
and knights from-the tents go-out
por les trois chevalier véoir
for the three knights to-see
et por les noveles savoir.
and for the news to-know
Demandent lor que il querroient
They-ask them what they sought
et se por pais faire venoient;
and if for peace to-make they-came
mais cil nul plait ne lor en tindrent
but those any plea not to-them thereof held
tant que devant l'emperor vindrent.
until that before the-emperor they-came
Devant la tente descendirent
Before the tent they-dismounted
et lor cevax tenir i firent;
and their horses hold there they-made
desous lour manteaux ont portées
beneath their mantles they-have carried
à leur senestre leur espées.
at their left their swords

Devant l'emperéor alèrent,
Before the-emperor they-went
mais onques ne le saluèrent;
but ever not him they-greeted
le mandement Artur contèrent
the message (of-)Arthur they-told
et li Rommain bien l'escoutèrent.
and the Romans well it-heard
Cascuns a dit ce qu'il li plot,
Each has said that which-it him pleased
et ce que il à dire sot.
and that which he to say knew
Et l'emperère tot oï,
And the-emperor all heard
et quant li plot, si respondi:
and when him pleased so answered
d'Artus, ce dist Gavains, venon
from-Arthur this said Gawain we-come
et son message t'aporton;
and his message to-thee-we-bring
si homme sommes, il est sire,
his men we-are he is lord
bien devuns son message dire:
well we-ought his message say
par nos te mande et te desfant,
by us thee he-sends and thee forbids
et sacent tuit chertainement,
and let-know all certainly

que en France ton pié ne metes
that in France thy foot not thou-put
ne jà de ce ne t'entremetes,
nor ever of this not thee-meddle
car il la tient et desfandra,
for he it holds and will-defend
ne jà de toi ne la tandra.
nor ever of thee not it will-hold
Ce te mande que rien n'en prenges;
This to-thee he-sends that anything not-thereof thou-take
et se tu sor lui la chalenges,
and if thou against him it claimest
par bataille soit calangié
by battle be-it claimed
et par bataille desrainié.
and by battle vindicated
Romain por lor force la prisent
Romans by their force it took
et par lor force la conquisent,
and by their force it conquered
et il l'a par bataille éue
and he it-has by battle had
et longement l'a maintenue.
and long it-has maintained
Par bataille resoit prové
By battle again-be-it proved
li quels ara la poesté;
the which will-have the power

demain en faites demostrance
tomorrow thereof make showing
li quel de nous doit avoir France.
the which of us ought have France
Ou tu t'an vas, si t'en repaire,
Or thou thee-thence go so thee-thence return
si sera mius, n'as ci que faire,
so it-will-be better not-hast here what to-do
nos avons pris, tu as perdu.
we have taken thou hast lost
Li emperère a respondu:
The emperor has answered
que pas ne s'en retorneroit,
that at-all not himself-thence he-would-return
France estoit soie, avant iroit.
France was his forward he-would-go
Ce li pesoit s'il la perdoit
This him grieved if-he it lost
il conquerroit quanqu'il poroit;
he would-conquer whatever-he could
mais il quidoit à son espoir
but he thought to his hope
France conquerre et tot avoir.
France conquer and all have
Quintiliens emprès lui sist,
Quintilian beside him sat
et la parole emprès lui prist;
and the word after him took
ses niés estoit mult orgillos,
his nephew he-was very proud

mult fiers et mult contralios:
very fierce and very contrary
Breton, dist-il, sont vantéor,
Britons said-he are boasters
et todis sont manecéor.
and always are threateners
Manaces et vantances ont,
Threats and boasts they-have
assés manacent et poi font.
plenty they-threaten and little do
Encor avant, jo croi, parlast
Yet further I believe he-would-have-spoken
et les messages rampronast,
and the messengers would-have-taunted
mais Gauvains qui s'en coroça,
but Gawain who himself-thereof angered
s'espée trait, avant passa,
his-sword draws forward passed
le cief li fist del bu voler;
the head of-him he-made from-the trunk fly
as contes dit: alés monter.
to-the counts he-says go to-mount
Et li contes montent andui,
And the counts mount both
Gauvains od els, et cil od lui.
Gawain with them and they with him
Cascuns à son ceval se prant,
Each to his horse himself takes

si sont monté délivrémant
so are mounted speedily
escus as cols, lances as mains,
shields at-the necks lances in-the hands
congié n'i prisent as Romains.
leave not-there they-took of-the Romans
Es vous la cort tote estormie
Behold you the court all in-uproar
et li emperère s'escrie:
and the emperor himself-cries
que faites vous, honi nous ont,
what do you shamed us they-have
prendés les moi, mar en iront.
take them for-me ill thence they-will-go
Dont oïssiés hardis vassals
Then you-might-hear bold vassals
crier as armes, as cevals,
cry to-the arms to-the horses
or tost, or tost, montez, montez,
now quick now quick mount mount
poignez, poignez, corez, corez.
spur spur run run
Mult par véissiez l'ost frémir,
Very much you-might-see the-host stir
seles metre, chevax isir,
saddles put horses go-out
prandre lances, espées ceindre,
take lances swords gird
esperoner por tost ateindre.
spur for quickly to-overtake

Et li conte s'an vont esrant
And the counts themselves-thence go journeying
qui sovent se vont regardant.
who often themselves go looking-back
Romain les suient à desroi,
Romans them follow in disorder
qui par chemin, qui par chaumoi,
some by road some by stubble-field
ça dui, ça troi, ça cinq, ça sis,
here two here three here five here six
ça set, ça huit, ça nuef, ça dis.
here seven here eight here nine here ten
Un en i ot qui point avant,
One of-them there was who spurs ahead
cheval ot bon et tot corant,
horse he-had good and all running
si lor a dit: signor, estés
so to-them has said lords stop
vilanie est que ne tornés.
villainy it-is that not you-turn
Gérins de Cartres trestorna,
Gerin of Chartres turned-about
l'escu prist, la lance alogna;
the-shield took the lance lengthened
de son ceval jus le porta,
from his horse down him carried
tant com li lance li dura,
as-far as the lance to-him lasted
parmi le cors l'espiel lui mist,
through the body the-spear to-him put

mort l'abati, plus ne li fist.
dead him-struck-down more not to-him did
Puis li a dist: or est noax
Then to-him has said now it-is worse
vostre cevax prist trop grant sax;
your horse took too great leaps
mius vous venist estre en vos trés
better to-you would-come to-be in your tents
que si hontosement remès.
than so shamefully remained
Bos esgarda que Gérins fist
Bos watched what Gerin did
et entendi de ce qu'il dist;
and heard of that which-he said
envie ot de faire altretal,
desire he-had of doing likewise
le cief jura de son ceval.
the head he-swore of his horse
Contre un chevalier s'eslaissa
Against a knight himself-launched
et cil à lui qui ne l' dota.
and that-one at him who not him feared
Bos le féri parmi la gole
Bos him struck through the throat
de si el col en la moole;
up so-far in-the neck in the marrow
et cil caï, gole baëe,
and that-one fell throat gaping
qui la lance avoit engolée.
who the lance had swallowed

Et li cuens li cria: dan mestre,
And the count to-him cried lord master
de tex morsiax vous sai je pestre.
with such morsels you know-how I to-feed
An pes soiez, si vos gisez
In peace be so you lie
cez qui vos sivent atandez;
those who you follow await
dites à cez qui ci vandront
say to those who here will-come
que li message par ci vont.
that the messengers through here go
Un en i ot de Rome né
One of-them there was of Rome born
bien noblement emparenté,
very nobly kinned
Romain l'apeloient Marcel,
Romans him-called Marcellus
bon ceval ot fort et isnel;
good horse he-had strong and swift
monté as de derreins,
mounted at-the of last
puis passa touz les primereins.
then passed all the first
N'avoit mie lance apportée,
Not-he-had at-all lance brought
por tost aler l'ot obliée,
for quickly to-go it-he-had forgotten
cil aloit ataignant Gauvain,
that-one went overtaking Gawain

esperonant, lasqié le frain,
spurring slackened the rein
il l'avoit pris à costoier
he him-had taken to flank
ne li pooit mes esloignier.
nor from-him could more distance
Sa main tandi à Gauvain prandre,
His hand he-stretched to Gawain take
promis l'avoit tot vif à randre;
promised him-he-had all alive to render
Gavains le vit, si s'arestut,
Gawain him saw so himself-stopped
et cil fu près, si trescorut;
and that-one was near so ran-past
al trepas traist Gauvins l'espée,
at-the passing drew Gawain the-sword
el cief li a tote anbarrée,
in-the head to-him he-has all driven
jusqu'as espaulles le fendi,
as-far-as-the shoulders him split
onques li coiffes ne l' gari.
ever the coif not him saved
Cil caï et fina sa vie
That-one fell and ended his life
et Gauvains dist, par cortesie:
and Gawain said by courtesy
Marcel', en infers où tu vas,
Marcellus in hell where thou goest
à Quintilien nonceras,
to Quintilian thou-wilt-announce

par toi li mant, et tu li di
by thee to-him I-send and thou to-him tell
que Breton sont assés hardi;
that Britons are quite bold
lor droit voelent bien desrainier
their right they-wish well to-vindicate
et plus faire que manecier.
and more do than threaten
Dont r'a Gauvains ses compagnons,
Then in-turn-has Gawain his companions
Gérin et Bos, par nom somons
Gerin and Bos by name summoned
qu'il de recief trestornaissent,
that-they once again should-turn-about
à un des encalçans jostaissent.
with one of-the pursuers should-joust
Gauvains lor dist et il le firent,
Gawain to-them says and they it did
trois Romains s'emprès abatirent.
three Romans straightway they-struck-down
Li messager bien en aloient
The messengers well thence went
et li ceval les emportoient,
and the horses them carried-off
et li Romain les encauçoient
and the Romans them pursued
qu'à lor pooir les destragnoient.
that-to their power them pressed

Mult les aloient ateignant
Much them went overtaking
et des lances sovent botant,
and with-the lances often thrusting
mult lor donoient granz colées
many to-them gave great blows
or des lances or des espées;
now with-the lances now with-the swords
mais ains ne porent tant férir
but ever not they-could so-much strike
c'un an poïssent retenir,
that-one of-them they-could retain
ne navrer, ne deschevalchier,
nor wound nor unhorse
ne de nule rien domagier.
nor in any thing harm
Un en i ot cosin Marcel,
One of-them there was cousin (of-)Marcellus
ceval avoit assés isnel,
horse he-had quite swift
dolans estoit de son cosin
grieved he-was for his cousin
qu'il vit gisant sor le cemin;
whom-he saw lying on the road
travers les cans esperonoit,
across the fields he-spurred
les trois chevaliers aproïsmoit
the three knights he-approached
al traverser voloit férir,
at-the crossing he-wished to-strike

mais quant Gauvains le vit venir
but when Gawain him saw come
si l'ala férir sor l'escu,
so him-went to-strike on the-shield
ains qu'il s'éust aparcéu:
before that-he himself-had perceived
sa lance laissa jus caoir,
his lance he-let down fall
ainc ne li pot mestier avoir.
ever not to-him could use have
S'espée traist, férir quida,
His-sword he-drew strike thought
par grant aïr le puing leva,
with great fury the fist raised
et Gauvains li a tot trancié
and Gawain to-him has all cut
le bras que il avoit haucié;
the arm which he had raised
l'espée, le bras et le poing
the-sword the arm and the fist
li fist voler el camp, bien loing.
to-him he-made fly in-the field very far
Autre colp li éust doné,
Another blow to-him he-would-have given
mais cil de Rome l'ont hasté,
but those of Rome him-have hurried
ensi l'alèrent encalçant,
thus him-went pursuing

tant qu'en un bos vinrent itant
until that-in a wood they-came so-far
qui ert entr'aus et le castel
which was between-them and the castle
que Artus avoit fait novel.
which Arthur had made new
Artus ot sis mil chevaliers
Arthur had six thousand knights
tramis après les messagiers,
sent after the messengers
par les mons et les vax cerquier
through the mountains and the vales to-search
et por la contrée espiier;
and for the country to-spy
encontre les messagiers fussent,
toward the messengers they-should-be
se mestier fust, si's socorussent.
if need were so-them they-should-succor
Un bois avoient trépassé
A wood they-had passed
et dejoste erent aresté;
and beside were halted
sor lor cevax armés séoient,
on their horses armed they-sat
des messagiers garde prenoient.
of-the messengers watch they-took
De gens armées grans compaignes
Of folk armed great companies
virent colvrir totes les plaignes:
they-saw cover all the plains

les gens armées ont perçus
the folk armed they-have perceived
et ont les encauçans véus.
and have the pursuers seen
Emmi les els lor sont sailli
Amid the eyes to-them are leapt
à une vois et à un cri;
with one voice and with one cry
et li Romain, quant il les virent,
and the Romans when they them saw
par la campagne s'espandirent.
through the plain themselves-spread
Tex i ot qui furent irié
Such there were who were angered
que tant avoient encalcié,
that so-far they-had pursued
et li Breton les envaïrent
and the Britons them attacked
qui el retor maint en férirent.
who in-the return many of-them struck
Mult en ont conséu et pris,
Many of-them they-have overtaken and taken
et mult detrancié et ocis.
and many cut-down and killed
Peredur fu uns rices ber,
Peredur was a rich baron
n'ot en Rome d'armes son per,
not-be-had in Rome of-arms his peer

dix mil armés ot em baillie
ten thousand armed he-had in keeping
itant ot en connestablie;
so-many he-had in constabulary
cil oï parler de la gait
that-one heard speak of the ambush
que li Breton avoient fait,
which the Britons had made
isnelment à dix mil escus,
quickly with ten thousand shields
a cels de Rome socorus.
he-has those of Rome succored
Par droite force et par destroit
By right force and by stress
od les armés qu'il conduioit,
with the armed whom-he led
fist les Bretons el bois entrer,
he-made the Britons into-the wood enter
n'i porent mie contrester.
not-there they-could at-all resist
De si al bos dura li cace
Up so-far to-the wood lasted the chase
qu'il ne lor porent tenir place;
that-they not to-them could hold place
al bois se sunt contretenu
at-the wood themselves they-are held-out
et iloc se sunt desfendu.
and there themselves are defended

Et li Romain les asalirent
And the Romans them assailed
qui de lor gent mult i perdirent,
who of their folk much there lost
car li Breton les atraioient
for the Britons them drew-in
al bois et si les ocioient;
to-the wood and so them killed
espesse estoit celle mellée
thick was that melee
entre le bois et la valée.
between the wood and the valley
Quant Artur vit le demorier
When Arthur saw the delay
que faisoient si messagier;
which made his messengers
et que cil pas ne revenoient
and that those at-all not came-back
qui à l'encontre alé estoient,
who to the-meeting gone were
Yder le fil Nut apela,
Yder the son (of-)Nut he-called
set mil chevalier li livra,
seven thousand knights to-him delivered
après les autres les tramist,
after the others them he-sent
et li rova qu'il les querist.
and him asked that-he them seek
Gauvains et Bos se combatoient,
Gawain and Bos themselves fought

et li autre tot i féroient,
and the others all there struck
grant noise i avoit et for hu.
great noise there was and strong shout
A tant sunt li Breton venu
At that are the Britons come
et mult s'i sunt revigoré,
and much themselves-there are reinvigorated
sor als ont le camp recovré.
over them they-have the field recovered
Ider point, s'ensaigne cria
Yder spurs his-war-cry cried
et cil od lui qu'il i mena;
and those with him whom-he there led
tant i féri à sa maisnie
so-much there struck with his household
que mainte sele i a voidie.
that many-a saddle there he-has emptied
Maint ceval pris et gaagnié,
Many-a horse taken and won
et maint chevalier trebucié;
and many-a knight tumbled
et Peredur l'estor maintint,
and Peredur the-fight maintained
séréement el camp revint:
calmly to-the field came-back
bien sot foïr, bien sot torner
well he-knew-how to-flee well knew to-turn
bien sot chacier, bien sot ester.
well knew to-chase well knew to-stand

Sovant véissiéz beles chaces
Often you-might-see fair chases
et tornoier par plusors places.
and wheeling through several places
Qui hardis fu, hardi trova,
Who bold was bold found
joste ot qui joste demanda;
joust had who joust asked
qui férir valt sempré féri,
who to-strike wished straightway struck
plus de trois cent en i caï.
more than three hundred of-them there fell
Breton féroient à desroi,
Britons struck in disorder
n'i voloient tenir conroi;
not-there they-wished to-hold array
désiros erent de joster
desirous they-were of jousting
et de lor proece mostrer;
and of their prowess showing
chevalerie desiroient
chivalry they-desired
por ce souvent se desroient,
for this often themselves broke-rank
ne lor caloit comment alast
not to-them it-mattered how it-went
mais com li guerre commençast.
but that the war began
Peredur fu forment en grès,
Peredur was greatly in eagerness

ses chevaliers tint de soi près;
his knights he-held from himself near
assés sot d'estor et de guerre,
plenty he-knew of-fight and of war
et bien covrir et bien requerre.
and well to-cover and well to-attack
Sovent pognoit, sovent jostoit;
Often he-spurred often jousted
cels qui caoient rescooit,
those who fell he-rescued
Bos d'Ozenefort aparçut,
Bos of-Oxford perceived
qui de l'estor l'estre connut,
who of the-fight the-state knew
que jà sans perte n'en iroit,
that ever without loss not-thence he-would-go
se il Peredur n'ocioit,
if he Peredur not-killed
quar par lui Romain se tenoient
for by him Romans themselves held
qui la soie gent ocioient;
who the his-own folk killed
et li Breton trop folement
and the Britons too foolishly
s'embatoient entre lor gent,
themselves-thrust among their folk
des plus hardis et des millors
of-the most bold and of-the best
traist à consel à lui pluisors:
he-drew to counsel to him many

baron, dist-il, parlés à moi
barons said-he speak to me
vous qui Artur amés de foi,
you who Arthur love with faith
commencie avons cest estor
begun we-have this fight
sans le consel à no signor;
without the counsel of our lord
se bien nos en vient, bien sera,
if good to-us thereof comes good it-will-be
se malement, il nous hara;
if badly he us will-hate
se nous somes li sordoior
if we are the worse-off
et de cest camp n'aions honor,
and from this field not-we-have honor
honte et damage i recevron
shame and damage there we-shall-receive
et la haine Artur aron.
and the hatred (of-)Arthur shall-have
Por ce nous convenroit pener
For this us it-would-behoove to-strive
de Peredur à encontrer,
of Peredur to encounter
que vif ou mort le puisson prandre
that alive or dead him we-may take
et à Artur mener et randre;
and to Arthur lead and render

jà altrement n'em partiron
ever otherwise not-thence we-shall-part
que mult grant perte ni aion.
that very great loss not-there we-have
12275 Faites tot ce que jo ferai,
Do all that which I shall-do
et là venés où jou irai.
and there come where I shall-go
Cil disent que bien le feront
Those say that well it they-will-do
et jà de son consel n'istront.
and ever from his counsel not-will-go-out

Peredur, and the Prisoners' Road

XI

Bos seizes Peredur in the press and drags him down among the Britons, and the leaderless Romans are routed. Arthur sends the prisoners to Paris under Cador, Borel, Richard, and Bedivere; Lucius sends Sertorius, Evander, Caritius, and Catellus Vulteius by night to ambush the road. Borel of Le Mans is killed and the Britons are near defeat, until Guitart of Poitiers comes with his foragers; Evander and Catellus are taken and the prisoners reach Paris. Lucius, losing heart, makes for Autun by Langres; Arthur passes him by night, waits in the valley of Soefie, sets his baggage on a hill to seem an army, hides a reserve under the count of Gloucester in a wood, and orders his battalions under Aguisel and Cador, Bos and Gerin, Hoel and Gawain, and Kay and Bedivere.

Tant ot cels od lui qu'il volt,
So-many he-had those with him as-he wished
et espié et véu ot
and spied and seen he-had
li quels d'auls Peredur estoit,
the which of-them Peredur was
qui tos les Romains maistrioit.
who all the Romans mastered
Cele part ala fièrement
That side he-went fiercely
et si compagnon ausement;
and his companions likewise
onques n'i prisent fin ne cesse
ever not-there they-took end nor cease
dus qu'il vinrent en la presse
until that-they came into the press
là où Peredur cevalçoit
there where Peredur rode
qui tos les Romains conduioit.
who all the Romans led
Bos lui corut, contre lui poinst
Bos at-him ran against him spurred
et assés près de lui se joinst;
and quite near to him himself joined
jeta les bras, si l'emporta,
he-threw the arms so him-carried-off
entre les Bretons se fiça,
among the Britons himself thrust

de son gré se laia caoir
of his will himself he-let fall
mervelle péussiés véoir.
marvel you-could see
En la grant presse chéi jus
In the great press he-fell down
entre ses braz Petreius.
between his arms Peredur
Bos le tint et Peredur traist,
Bos him held and Peredur drew
mais n'a talent qu'aler le laist.
but not-has desire that-go him he-let
Romain pognent à la rescolsse,
Romans spur to the rescue
qui lance porte tost l'escrosse.
who lance carries quickly it-breaks
Quant les lances furent faillies,
When the lances were failed
caplent as espées forbies;
they-hew with-the swords furbished
Peredur voloit rescolre
Peredur they-wished to-rescue
et Breton vienent Bos socolre:
and Britons come Bos to-succor
là véist on fière assamblée,
there might-see one fierce encounter
estor espès, fiere mellée,
fight thick fierce melee
hiaumes ploier, escus perchier,
helms bend shields pierce

haubers froissier, hanstes brisier,
hauberks crush shafts break
seles voidier, seles torner,
saddles empty saddles turn
homes chéoir, homes navrer.
men fall men wound
Breton l'ensaigne lor signor,
Britons the-war-cry of-their lord
et li Romain crient la lor.
and the Romans cry the theirs
Li un s'esforcent que il l'aient
The ones themselves-strive that they him-have
et li altre que il l'antraient.
and the others that they him-drag-back
Ains onques connissoit on
Rather ever knew one
qui ert Romain et qui Breton,
who was Roman and who Briton
fors que tant solement as cris
except that so only by-the cries
et as paroles et as dis.
and by-the words and by-the sayings
Gavains parmi la presse vait
Gawain through the press goes
à s'espée l'avoie fait:
with his-sword the-way made
fiert et anpoint, et chaple et bóte,
strikes and thrusts and hews and pushes
maint en abat, maint en desrote.
many-a-one thereof strikes-down many-a-one thereof routs

N'i a Romain se ses cols voie
Not-there is Roman if his blows he-see
ne li face, se il puet, voie.
not to-him make if he can way
Yder torne de l'altre part,
Yder turns on the-other side
qu'il or fait de Romain essart;
that-he now makes of Romans clearing
Gerins de Cartres li ajüe,
Gerin of Chartres him helps
li uns por l'altre s'esvertue,
the one for the-other himself-exerts
il ont Peredur trespassé
they have Peredur passed
et lui et Bos ont adossé.
and him and Bos have backed
Et Breton ont Bos relevé,
And Britons have Bos raised
et l'ont sor un ceval monté;
and him-have on a horse mounted
Peredur i ont maintenu
Peredur there they-have held
qui maint colp i avoit féru.
who many-a blow there had struck
Parmi la preisse l'ont mené
Through the press him-they-have led
dedens lor force à séurté;
within their force in safety
bones gardes li ont laissie,
good guards to-him they-have left

si ont l'estor recommencie.
so have the-fight begun-again
Cil furent sans maintenéor
Those were without leader
comme nès sans governor,
as ship without steersman
cui vanz quel part qu'il vialt l'an point,
which wind which way that-it wishes it-thence drives
quant il n'i a qui droit la moint,
when it not-there is-one who straight it lead
altresi fu de la conpaigne
likewise it-was of the company
qui ot perdu son chevetaigne;
which had lost its captain
ne fu puis mie desfensable
not it-was since at-all defensible
qui perdu ot son connestable.
which lost had its constable
Et Breton les vont laidoiant
And Britons them go mistreating
et espessement l'abatant;
and thickly them-striking-down
les abatus vont arestant,
the struck-down go seizing
et les fuiant vont encalçant.
and the fleeing go pursuing
Mult en destruient et ocient
Many of-them they-destroy and kill
et si les despoillent et lient;
and so them strip and bind

puis ont retrais lor compaignons,
then they-have withdrawn their companions
al bois en vinrent as prisons,
to-the wood thence came with-the prisoners
lors en ont Peredur porté
then thence they-have Peredur carried
et à lor signor présenté
and to their lord presented
et des autres prisons assés,
and of-the other prisoners plenty
Artus les en a merciés;
Arthur them for-it has thanked
puis lour a dit se il vencoit
then to-them has said if he conquered
que à cascuns son fief croistroit.
that to each his fief he-would-increase
Artus fist les prisons garder
Arthur made the prisoners guard
qu'il ne s'en puissent escaper;
that-they not themselves-thence can escape
puis parlé a et consel pris
then spoken he-has and counsel taken
qu'il les trametra à Paris;
that-he them will-send to Paris
em prison les fera tenir
in prison them he-will-make hold
tant qu'il en face son plaisir,
until that-he of-them do his pleasure
car se il en l'ost les retient,
for if he in the-host them retains

comment qu'il aut, perdre les crient;
however that-it go lose them he-fears
aparille qui les menra
he-prepares who them will-lead
et establi qui's conduira:
and appointed who-them will-conduct
Cador et Borel et Richier,
Cador and Borel and Richard
et Beduier le boutillier,
and Bedivere the butler
quatre contes de bien halt lin;
four counts of very high line
lever les rova par matin,
rise them he-asked by morning
et o les prisons tant alaissent,
and with the prisoners so-far they-go
et bons conduiséors menaissent;
and good guides they-lead
que li menéor seur féussent
that the leaders sure were
et aséur aler péussent.
and secure go could
L'emperères par ses espies
The-emperor by his spies
a tost les noveles oïes,
has soon the news heard
que li baron matin movroient
that the barons early would-move
qui à Paris aler devoient;
who to Paris go were-to

dix mille chevalier fist armer
ten thousand knights he-made arm
si's rova tote nuit aler,
so-them asked all night go
et les prisons adevancissent
and the prisoners forestall
se ils pueent si's rescolsissent.
if they can so-them rescue
Sertorius de Libe sire
Sertorius of Libya lord
et Evander li rois de Sire;
and Evander the king of Syria
et de Rome Caritius,
and of Rome Caritius
et Catellus Wlteius.
and Catellus Vulteius
Cascuns des quens ot grant terre,
Each of-the counts had great land
et cascuns fu bien duis de guerre.
and each was well skilled in war
Cil furent ellit et somons
Those were chosen and summoned
d'aler socolre les prisons.
of-going to-succor the prisoners
Chievetaines des autres furent;
Captains of-the others they-were
dis mil armés le soir esmurent,
ten thousand armed the evening set-out

cil del païs les conduioient
those of-the country them led
qui la droite voie savoient.
who the right way knew
Tote nuit ont tant cevalcié
All night they-have so-much ridden
et tant alé et tant brocié,
and so-much gone and so-much spurred
el cemin de Paris entrèrent,
onto-the road of Paris they-entered
et liu convenable trovèrent
and place suitable found
à faire lor embuissement;
to make their ambush
là s'arestèrent coïement,
there themselves-halted quietly
tant que li clers jors aparut,
until that the clear day appeared
li meners de l'ost s'esmut.
the escort of the-host itself-set-out
Es vous al main, la gent Artur
Behold you in-the morning the folk (of-)Arthur
cevalçant alques aséur,
riding somewhat secure
et nequedent agait dotoient,
and nevertheless ambush they-feared
en deus compaignes cevalçoient:
in two companies they-rode

Cador et Borel et lor gent
Cador and Borel and their folk
cevalçoient premièrement;
rode first
li quens Richard et Beduier
the count Richard and Bedivere
qui lor homes durent garder,
who their men were-to guard
od sis cent armés les suioient
with six hundred armed them followed
qui les prisons garder devoient
who the prisoners guard were-to
les poins deriers lor dos liés,
the fists behind their backs bound
et desos les cevax lor piés.
and beneath the horses their feet
Es vous cel devant sor la gait
Behold you those in-front upon the ambush
que cil de Rome avoient fait;
which those of Rome had made
et li Romain saillent ensamble,
and the Romans leap-out together
tote la terre sos als tramble.
all the earth beneath them trembles
Hardiement les envaïrent
Boldly them they-attacked
et cil forment se desfendirent.
and those strongly themselves defended

Beduier et Richard oïrent
Bedivere and Richard heard
la noise et les cris que cil firent;
the noise and the cries which those made
les prisons firent arester
the prisoners they-made halt
et en un lieu séur ester.
and in a place secure stand
A lor escuiers les livrèrent,
To their squires them they-delivered
et à garder les commandèrent;
and to guard them commanded
puis laièrent cevax aler,
then they-let horses go
ne finèrent d'esperoner
nor ceased of-spurring
très qu'il furent joste as lor.
until that-they were beside to-the theirs
Si s'entrecorent à vigor,
So each-other-run-at with vigor
Romain vont çà et là pognant,
Romans go here and there spurring
ne volent mie entendre tant
not they-wish at-all to-attend so-much
à desconfire les Bretons,
to defeat the Britons
com à deslier lor prisons.
as to unbind their prisoners
Et li Breton ensamble estoient,
And the Britons together were

qui encontre als se folioient;
who against them themselves toiled
et li Romain dolant estoient
and the Romans grieved were
por les prisons qu'il ne trovoient:
for the prisoners whom-they not found
à querre les tant entendirent
to seek them so-much they-attended
que de lor gent mult i perdirent.
that of their folk much there they-lost
Breton par conrois se partirent
Britons by troops themselves divided
et quatre eschieles establirent:
and four battalions established
Cador od les Cornualois,
Cador with the Cornishmen
et Beduier les Hurupois
and Bedivere the Hurupois
Borel od cels del Mans od soi
Borel with those of-the Mans with himself
et Richard des siens un conroi.
and Richard of-the his-own an array
Li rois Evander aparçut
The king Evander perceived
que sa force et sa gent descrut;
that his force and his folk decreased
ses maisnies a fait restraindre,
his households he-has made close-up
quant as prisons ne pot ataindre,
since to-the prisoners not he-could reach

puis les fist ensamble tenir
then them made together hold
et ordenéement férir;
and in-order strike
dont en orent Romain le pris
then thereof had Romans the prize
et li Breton orent le pis.
and the Britons had the worst
Assés en retinrent et prisent
Many of-them they-retained and took
et quatre des millors ocisent,
and four of-the best killed
et li fius Ider i fu mort,
and the son (of-)Ider there was dead
un chevalier vaillans et fors;
a knight valiant and strong
et Hiresgas de Peritum,
and Hiresgas of Peritum
n'i avoit plus hardi nus um;
not-there was more bold any man
et Aliduc de Tintaioel
and Aliduc of Tintagel
dont si parent orent grant doel;
whereof his kinsmen had great grief
et Amauris li Orkanois,
and Amauris the Orkneyman
ne sai s'il fu Brès ou Walois.
not I-know if-he was Breton or Welsh

Borel del Mans un rices quens
Borel of-the Mans a rich count
qui grant mestier avoit as soens:
who great use had to-the his-own
si contenoit hardiement
so bore-himself boldly
et s'em tua plus de cent.
and so-thereof killed more than hundred
Si poinst contre lui Evander,
So spurred against him Evander
de sa lance li fist le fer
of his lance to-him he-made the iron
parmi la gole trespasser,
through the throat pass
Borel caï, ne pot ester.
Borel fell not could stand
Breton s'aloient esmaiant
Britons themselves-went dismaying
qui de lor gent perdoient tant,
who of their folk lost so-much
contre un d'aus i a dis Romains,
against one of-them there are ten Romans
si's voloient saisir as mains.
so-them they-wished to-seize with-the hands
Enès le pas desconfi fussent
Right-on the spot routed they-would-be
et lor prisons perdu éussent,
and their prisoners lost would-have

se ne fust Guitar de Poitiers
if not were Guitart of Poitiers
qui le jor gardoit les foriers:
who the day guarded the foragers
il ot tot la novele oïe,
he had all the news heard
que des Romains une partie
that of-the Romans a part
estoient as prisons socolre,
were to-the prisoners to-succor
cele part laient cevax colre,
that way they-let horses run
od lui trois mil chevaliers
with him three thousand knights
et la maisnie et li archiers.
and the household and the archers
Romain al férir entendoient
Romans to-the striking attended
qui les Bretons desconfisoient;
who the Britons were-routing
quant Guitar vint à ses maisnies,
when Guitart came with his households
esperonant, lances baissies,
spurring lances lowered
plus de cent en descevalchièrent
more than hundred of-them they-unhorsed
qui onques puis ne redercièrent;
who ever after not rose-again
es vous les Romains esbaïs,
behold you the Romans dismayed

et desconfis et mal baillis.
and routed and ill handled
Ce quidoient Artus venist
This they-thought Arthur came
et tote sa gent là sivist,
and all his folk there followed
tant i virent des lor caoir,
so-many there they-saw of-the theirs fall
de garison n'orent espoir.
of safety not-they-had hope
Cil del Poitou les asailloient
Those of-the Poitou them assailed
et li Breton ne lor failloient:
and the Britons not them failed
li un por les altres s'avivent
the ones for the others themselves-quicken
de vaincre les Bretons estrivent.
of conquering the Britons they-vie
Mais li Romain tornent lor dos
But the Romans turn their backs
tot desconfi et tot desclos;
all routed and all exposed
as herberges volent vertir,
to-the lodgings they-wish to-turn
car aillors n'i sorent garir;
for elsewhere not-there they-knew to-be-safe
bien les chacièrent et ataintrent
well them they-chased and overtook
qui d'ax abatre ne se faintrent
who of-them striking-down not themselves held-back

rois Evander et Catellus
king Evander and Catellus
et des autres sis cent et plus
and of-the others six hundred and more
furent ataint et abatu,
were overtaken and struck-down
alqant mort, alqant retenu:
some dead some retained
tant em prisent com il volrent,
as-many thereof they-took as they wished
et tant com amener em porent.
and as-many as lead thereof they-could
Puis sunt al cemin retorné
Then they-are to-the road returned
vers li bataille avoit esté.
toward the battle had been
Borel le bon comte del Mans,
Borel the good count of-the Mans
et les mors quisent par les cans.
and the dead they-sought through the fields
Le conte trovèrent gisant
The count they-found lying
tot detrancié et tot sanglant.
all cut-up and all bloody
Porter en firent les navrés,
Carry thence they-made the wounded
et les ocis ont enterrés.
and the killed they-have buried

A cels qui Artus ot rové
To those whom Arthur had asked
et si com il ot comandé
and just as he had commanded
lor primerains prisons cargièrent,
their first prisoners they-loaded
et à Paris les envoièrent.
and to Paris them sent
Les autres pris isnelement
The others taken quickly
firent loier estroitement,
they-made bind tightly
el castel, od els l'emmenèrent,
to-the castle with them them-led
al roi Artur les présentèrent.
to-the king Arthur them presented
Tote l'aventure li disent,
All the-adventure to-him they-told
et tot ensamble li promisent,
and all together to-him promised
se od Romains se combatoient,
if with Romans themselves they-fought
que sans dotance les vaincroient.
that without doubt them they-would-conquer
L'emperère sot l'aventure,
The-emperor knew the-adventure
et sot la grant desconfiture;
and knew the great rout

sot d'Evander qui estoit pris
knew of-Evander who was taken
et des autres qui sont ocis.
and of-the others who are killed
Vit sa gent forment esmaïe
Saw his folk greatly dismayed
et vit la guerre commencie;
and saw the war begun
vit que sovent li mescaoit
saw that often him it-mishappened
et que noiant n'i conquerroit.
and that at-all not-there he-would-conquer
Angoisseus fu, mult s'esmaia
Anguished he-was much himself-dismayed
pansa et pansa et dota.
thought and thought and feared
En dotance fu qu'il feroit,
In doubt he-was what-he would-do
se à Artur se combatroit,
if with Arthur himself he-would-fight
u son rière ban atandroit
or his rear levy would-await
qui après lui venir devoit;
which after him come was-to
la bataille forment cremoit
the battle greatly he-feared
por ce que cascuns jor perdoit.
for this that each day he-lost

Consel prist qu'à Ostom ira
Counsel he-took that-to Autun he-will-go
et par Lengres trespassera;
and by Langres will-pass
tote sa gent fist esmovoir
all his folk he-made set-out
à Lengres vinrent de halt soir.
to Langres they-came of late evening
En la cité se herbergièrent
In the city themselves lodged
et ès valées se logièrent;
and in-the valleys themselves camped
Lengre siet sor le cief del mont
Langres sits on the head of-the mount
et les valées entor sont.
and the valleys around are
Artus sot qu'il voloient faire
Arthur knew what-they wished to-do
et quel part il voloient traire,
and which way they wished to-draw
bien sot qu'il ne se combatroit
well he-knew that-he not himself would-fight
de si que forçor gent aroit
until so that greater folk he-would-have
ne volt pas iloc sejorner,
not he-wished at-all there to-sojourn
ne el païs asséurer;
nor in-the country to-make-secure

alquant qu'il pot isnelement
as-many as-he could quickly
fist somonre et armer sa gent;
he-made summon and arm his folk
Langres a laissie à senestre,
Langres he-has left at left
oltre s'entrespassa à destre.
beyond himself-passed at right
L'emperéor valt devancir
The-emperor he-wished to-forestall
et la voie d'Oston tolir.
and the way of-Autun to-cut-off
Tote nuit a de si al main
All night he-has up so-far to-the morning
Artus esré que bois, que plain,
Arthur journeyed as-well wood as plain
tant qu'il vint en une valée
until that-he came into a valley
qui Soefie estoit nomée.
which Soefie was named
Par cele valée passoit
Through that valley passed
qui d'Oston à Langres aloit.
who from-Autun to Langres went
Ses homes fist Artus armer
His men made Arthur arm
et ses batailles ordoner;
and his battalions order

quel hore que Romain venissent
whatever hour that Romans came
que prestement les recoillissent.
that readily them they-receive
Tot le harnois et le frapaille
All the baggage and the rabble
qui mestier n'avoit de bataille,
which use not-had of battle
a fait joste un mont arester
he-has made beside a mount halt
por homes armés resambler;
for men armed to-resemble
que cil de Rome, s'il les voient,
that those of Rome if-they them see
de la multitude s'esfroient.
at the multitude themselves-frighten
Sis mil sis cens soisante sis
Six thousand six hundred sixty six
en une esciele tot de pris,
in one battalion all of worth
mist en un bois, solonc un tertre
he-put in a wood along a mound
qui aloc estoit à senestre.
which there was at left
Mordup uns quens de Glocestre
Morud a count of Gloucester
dut connestable de cel estre:
was-to constable of that be
à cels, dist Artus, ci estés;
to those said Arthur here stay

por nule rien ne vous movés,
for any thing not you move
se mestier est ça retorrai
if need is here I-shall-return
et les autres par vous tenrai;
and the others by you I-shall-hold
et se Romain par aventure,
and if Romans by chance
tornoient à desconfiture,
turned to rout
poigniés après, ne vous targiés,
spur after not you delay
d'als ocire ne vous fagniés!
of-them killing not you hold-back
Et cil dient: bien i ferron.
And those say well there we-shall-do
Dont prist un altre légion
Then he-took an other legion
de fors homes et de vassax,
of strong men and of vassals
hiaumes laciés, sor lor cevax:
helms laced on their horses
si's mist en un liu plus véable
so-them he-put in a place more visible
n'i ot fors lui nul connestable;
not-there was but him any constable
là fu la maisnie privée
there was the household private
qui l'ot norie et eslevée.
which him-had nurtured and raised

Emmi fist tenir son dragon
Amid he-made hold his dragon
que il portoit por gonfanon.
which he carried for gonfanon
De l'autre gent fist huit compagnes
Of the-other folk he-made eight companies
en cascune ot dix chievetagnes:
in each were ten captains
à ceval fu l'une moitié
on horse was the-one half
et li autre furent à pié.
and the other were on foot
A tos ensamble commanda,
To all together he-commanded
et ce lor dist et lor proia
and this to-them said and them prayed
que cil qui à ceval seroient
that those who on horse would-be
et cil à pié se combatroient,
and those on foot themselves would-fight
d'entravers les Romains férissent,
from-athwart the Romans they-strike
hardiement les envaïssent.
boldly them attack
Cinq mil sis cent cinquante cinq
Five thousand six hundred fifty five
chevalier tos pris en eslic,
knights all taken in choice

ot cascune esciele nombrés
had each battalion numbered
des millors et des mius armés;
of-the best and of-the best armed
en quatre furent establies
in four were established
les compaignes en huit parties,
the companies in eight parts
quatre derrière et quatre avant,
four behind and four before
et emmi l'autre gent mult grant,
and amid the-other folk very great
cascune armée à sa manière.
each armed in its manner
Li frons de l'esquièle première
The front of the-battalion first
ot Aguisel d'Escosse en baille;
had Aguisel of-Scotland in keeping
l'autre Cador de Cornuaille.
the-other Cador of Cornwall
L'autre compaigne a Bos en main
The-other company has Bos in hand
et li quens Gerains de Cartain.
and the count Gerin of Chartres
La terce eskiele fu livrée,
The third battalion was delivered
de diverse manière armée,
of diverse manner armed

à Echille roi des Danois
to Achil king of-the Danes
et à Loth le roi des Norois.
and to Lot the king of-the Norwegians
La qarte prist Hoël en garde,
The fourth took Hoel in keeping
od lui Gauvains qui ne coarde.
with him Gawain who not shirks
Après cestes a altres quatre
After these there-are others four
aparilliés de combattre:
prepared of fighting
de l'une fust Kex justiciers
of the-one was Kay justiciar
et Beduer li bouteilliers.
and Bedivere the butler
Beduer ot les Herupois
Bedivere had the Hurupois
Kex Angevins et Chimontois
Kay Angevins and men-of-Chinon
al conte de Flandres Holdin,
to-the count of Flanders Holdin
et à Guitart le Poitevin
and to Guitart the Poitevin
fu l'altre esciele commandée
was the-other battalion entrusted
et il l'ont volentiers gardée.
and they it-have willingly kept
Quens Jugein de Leicestre,
Count Jugein of Leicester

et Jonathas de Dorecestre
and Jonathas of Dorchester
la sème compaigne reçurent,
the seventh company received
signor et connestable furent.
lord and constable they-were
Li quens de Cestre Curfalain,
The count of Chester Cursa
et de Bade li quens Urgain
and of Bath the count Urgent
orent l'uime esciele em baillie;
had the-eighth battalion in keeping
et Artus en aus mult s'afie.
and Arthur in them much himself-trusts
Tos les sergans et les archers
All the sergeants and the archers
et les vaillans arbalesters
and the valiant crossbowmen
mist des deus pars, fors de la presse,
he-put on-the two sides out of the press
qu'il traisissent à la traverse;
that-they shoot at the crosswise
tot cil furent devant le roi
all those were before the king
et il de tries en un conroi.
and he from behind in an array

The Battle of Saussy

XII

Arthur tells his barons that they have twice beaten Rome and will a third time; Lucius, a Spaniard between thirty and forty, tells the Romans that robbers bar the road to Autun. The armies close under clouds of arrows. Kay and Bedivere drive too deep into the Romans: Bocus, king of Media, kills Bedivere and Kay is mortally wounded, and Hiresgas avenges his uncle by splitting Bocus to the shoulders. Guitart kills the king of Africa, Holdin and Alifantin of Spain kill each other, and the counts of Bath, Wiltshire, and Chester fall. Hoel and Gawain reach the golden eagle, and Gawain fights Lucius hand to hand until the Romans rally; Arthur charges with Caliburn and kills Sertorius and Polibetes, the reserve falls on the Romans' rear, and Lucius is found dead among the slain, struck by an unknown lance.

Quant Artus ot fait ses parties
When Arthur had made his divisions
et establi ses compagnies,
and established his companies
oiés qu'il dist à ses noris,
hear what-he said to his nurslings
à ses barons, et à ses fis:
to his barons and to his sons
baron, dist-il, mult me confort,
barons said-he much myself I-comfort
quant je vos grans bontés recort,
when I your great goodnesses recall
et vos vertus et vos conquès,
and your virtues and your conquests
tostans vos voi hardis et près.
always you I-see bold and ready

Vostre proëce tos jors croist
Your prowess all days grows
et amende, à qui que il poist.
and improves to whom that it grieve
Quant jo me recort et porpens
When I myself recall and ponder
que Bretaigne est, à notre tens,
that Britain is in our time
dame de tantes régions
lady of so-many regions
par yos et par vos compaignons,
by you and by your companions
mult sui lies, mult m'en glorefi,
very I-am glad much myself-thereof I-glory
et en vous et en Deu me fi;
and in you and in God myself I-trust
que vous encor plus couquerrois
that you yet more will-conquer
et que vous plus poissant serois.
and that you more powerful will-be
Vos proëces et vos vertus
Your prowesses and your virtues
ont deus fois les Romains venqus,
have two times the Romans vanquished
et saciés que mes coers devine
and know that my heart divines
et tote rien le me destine,
and all thing it to-me destines

que vous encore les vaincrois
that you again them will-conquer
si's arés desconfis trois fois.
so-them will-have defeated three times
Vos avez vaincuz les Denois
You have conquered the Danes
vos avez vaincuz les Norois,
you have conquered the Norwegians
12695 vos avez vaincuz les François
you have conquered the French
et tenez France sor lor pois;
and hold France against their weight
bien devez vaincre les poiors
well you-ought conquer the worse
quant vaincuz avez les mellors.
since conquered you-have the better
Trebutaire vos volent faire,
Tributary you they-wish to-make
12700 et de nous voelent tréu traire,
and from us they-wish tribute to-draw
et France volent recovrer.
and France they-wish to-recover
Tel gent quideront ci trover
Such folk they-will-think here to-find
com il amainent d'Oriant,
as they bring from-the-East
mais dix de nos en valent çant;
but ten of us of-them are-worth hundred

ne's alés jà noiant dotant
not-them go ever at-all fearing
que femes valent altretant,
for women are-worth as-much
ne vous devés désespérer,
not you ought despair
ains vous devés en Dieu fier.
rather you ought in God trust
Nous les vaincrons légièrement
We them shall-conquer easily
à un petit de hardiment.
with a little of boldness
Bien saurai que cascuns fera
Well I-shall-know what each will-do
et comment il se contenra;
and how he himself will-bear
partot irai, partot venrai
everywhere I-shall-go everywhere I-shall-come
et en cascun besong serai.
and in each need I-shall-be
Quant la parole fut finée
When the word was ended
que li rois Artus a contée,
which the king Arthur has told
à une vois li respondirent
with one voice him they-answered
tot cil qui la parole oïrent,
all those who the word heard

que mius voelent es camp morir
that better they-wish in-the field to-die
que del camp sans victore issir.
than from-the field without victory go-out
Mult les oïssiés aramir
Much them you-might-hear vow
forment jurer, et fois plevir.
strongly swear and faiths pledge
Jà por paor ne li falront,
Ever for fear not him they-will-fail
tel fin com il fera feront.
such end as he will-make they-will-make
Lucius d'Espaigne fu nés,
Lucius of-Spain was born
vaillans et bien emparentés.
valiant and well kinned
Ans avoit de bele jovente
Years he-had of fair youth
mains de quarante et plus de trente.
less than forty and more than thirty
Hardis ert et de grant corage
Bold he-was and of great heart
s'avoit jà fait maint vasselage;
so-had already done many-a deed-of-valor
por sa force et por sa valor
for his strength and for his valor
l'avoit on fait emperéor.
him-had one made emperor

De Lengres par matin leva
From Langres by morning he-rose
et à Ostom aler quida;
and to Autun go thought
jà ert méue sa gent tote
already was moved his folk all
et mult i avoit noble rote
and very there was noble troop
quant il oï et sot l'agait
when he heard and knew the-ambush
qu'Artus avoit contre lui fait;
which-Arthur had against him made
vit que combatre li estouroit
saw that fight him it-would-behoove
u arière repaierroit.
or back he-would-return
Retorner ne voloit il mie,
To-return not wished he at-all
car ce sambleroit coardie,
for this would-seem cowardice
et se Breton le, porsuioient
and if Britons him pursued
assés tost les desconfiroient,
quite soon them they-would-defeat
car combatre ensamble et fuir
for fight together and flee
ne puet l'on mie bien sofrir.
not can one at-all well endure

Li rois, ses princes et ses dus
The kings his princes and his dukes
dont bien i ot cent mil et plus,
whereof well there were hundred thousand and more
et cels qui erent del sené
and those who were of-the senate
manda, si a à als parlé:
he-summoned so has to them spoken
oiés, dist-il, gentil signor,
hear said-he noble lords
bon vassal, bou conqueréor,
good vassals good conquerors
fil fustes as bons ancissors
sons you-were of-the good ancestors
qui conquisent les grans honors;
who conquered the great honors
par als ert Rome ciés del mont
by them was Rome head of-the world
et ert tant com Romain vivront.
and will-be as-long as Romans will-live
Cil conquisent le grant empire,
Those conquered the great empire
hontes ert s'à vo tans empire;
shame will-be if-in your time it-worsens
gentil furent et vous gentil,
noble they-were and you noble
de vaillant père vaillant fil.
of valiant father valiant sons

Cascuns de vous ot vaillant père
Each of you had valiant father
et la valors or en vous père;
and the valor now in you appears
cascuns se doit forment pener
each himself ought greatly strive
de son bon père resambler.
of his good father resembling
Honte puet avoir qui désert
Shame can have who deserves
qui l'ireté son père pert,
who the-heritage (of-)his father loses
et qui par sa malvaisté guerpist
and who by his baseness forsakes
ce que ses père li conquist.
that which his father for-him conquered
Je ne l' die mie, ce saichiez,
I not it say at-all this know
qu'ancor vous tieng à empiriez.
that-yet you I-hold for worsened
Prou furent et vous fustes pros,
Valiant they-were and you were valiant
et jo vous tien à vaillans tos.
and I you hold for valiant all
Or nos est la voie toloite
Now from-us is the way taken
qui à Ostom aloit plus droite,
which to Autun went most straight

aler, ne passer n'i poon
go nor pass not-there we-can
se par bataille n'i passon:
if by battle not-there we-pass
ne sai quel robéor nouvel,
not I-know what robbers new
ou robéor, ou laroncel,
or robbers or petty-thieves
nous ont devant close la voie
us have before closed the way
par où jo mener vous devoie,
by where I lead you was-to
il quidoient que jo fuisse,
they thought that I fled
u que la terre lor guerpisse;
or that the land to-them I-forsook
mais jo m'aloie destornant
but I me-went turning-aside
por als faire venir avant:
for them to-make come forward
or se sunt embatu sor vous,
now themselves are thrust upon you
prandés vos armes à escros;
take your arms at once
s'il nous atendent si férons
if-they us await so we-shall-strike
et se il fuient si's suions;
and if they flee so-them let-us-follow
metons frain à lor angresté,
let-us-put bridle to their fierceness

se destruions lor poësté.
so let-us-destroy their power
Maint en saillent as armes prendre
Many thence leap to-the arms to-take
et il n'i volrent plus atendre;
and they not-there wished more to-wait
lor bataille ont aparillie,
their battle they-have prepared
conrois fais et lor gent rengie.
troops made and their folk ranged
Mult i ot rois et de paiens
Many there were kings and of pagans
entremellés as crestiens,
intermingled with-the Christians
qui de Rome lor fié tenoient
who of Rome their fief held
et l'emperéor i servoient.
and the-emperor there served
Par trentaines, par quarantaines,
By thirties by forties
par cinquantaines, par soisantaines,
by fifties by sixties
par centaines, par légions
by hundreds by legions
devisèrent lour compaignons.
they-divided their companions
Par légions et par milliers
By legions and by thousands
departirent lor chevaliers;
they-parted their knights

maint à pié et maint à cheval
many on foot and many on horse
les uns el mont, les uns el val.
the ones on-the mount the ones in-the vale
Puis sont tot rangié et serré,
Then they-are all ranged and closed
contre la gent Artur alé.
against the folk (of-)Arthur gone
De l'une part en la valée
On the-one side into the valley
entra la gent romaine armée
entered the folk Roman armed
qui de Rome lor fiu tenoient
who of Rome their fief held
et l'emperéor en servoient;
and the-emperor thereby served
de l'altre part emmi lor vis
on the-other side amid their face
orent Breton le camp porpris;
had Britons the field occupied
dont oïssiez grant cornéis
then you-might-hear great horn-blowing
et de gresles grant sonéis.
and of trumpets great sounding
Seréement sovent passant,
Closely often passing
s'entrevinrent entre aproçant.
each-other-they-met each-other approaching

Là véissiés à l'aprochier
There you-might-see at the-approaching
sajetes traire, dars lanchier:
arrows shoot darts hurl
n'i osoit nul son oil olvrir,
not-there dared anyone his eye open
ne son viaire descovrir.
nor his face uncover
Sajetes volent comme grelle
Arrows fly like hail
trestos li airs en torble et melle;
all the air thereof troubles and mixes
là véissiés lances baissier
there you-might-see lances lower
et escus fraindre et depechier
and shields break and shatter
les lances donoient grans crois
the lances gave great cracks
en halt en sunt volé li trois,
on high thereof are flown the splinters
et après se sunt envaïs
and after themselves are attacked
as espées, as brans forbis.
with-the swords with-the blades furbished
Dont ot estor mervillos
Then was fight marvelous
et espoantable et hisdos.
and frightful and hideous

Onques hom ne vit si espès
Ever man not saw so thick
qui férir valt s'emprès ot mès;
who to-strike wished straightway had place
fals, n'esbaïs n'i ot mestier,
false nor-dismayed not-there had use
coars ne si sot consillier.
coward nor himself-there knew-how counsel
L'uns à ferir l'autre destorbe,
The-one at striking the-other hinders
la grant espoisse et la grant torbe
the great thickness and the great throng
fist la terre toute frémir
made the earth all tremble
et la valée retentir.
and the valley resound
Là véissiés pueple fermir
There you-might-see people tremble
et l'une gent l'altre envaïr;
and the-one folk the-other attack
l'un conroi à l'altre joster,
the-one array with the-other joust
homes cachier, homes ester,
men chase men stand
traire sajètes, dars jeter
shoot arrows darts throw
hantes brisier, retros voler,
shafts break stumps fly
trère espées, escus lever,
draw swords shields raise

les fors les foibles craventer,
the strong the weak overthrow
les morz as vivanz desoler.
the dead by-the living be-trampled
Et rompre sangles et poitrax,
And break girths and breast-straps
seles widier, fuir cevax.
saddles empty flee horses
Plaindre navrés, et mors coisir,
Moan wounded and dead fall
les uns crier, autres noisir.
the ones cry others clamor
Longement s'entrecombatirent
Long they-fought-each-other
et mainte plaie s'entrefirent;
and many-a wound each-other-made
que cil de Rome ne rusèrent,
that those of Rome not drew-back
ne sor Bretons ne recovrèrent,
nor over Britons not gained
que nus hom ne péust savoir
that any man not could know
qui péust la victoire avoir,
who could the victory have
de si que l'eskiele aproça
until so that the-battalion approached
que Beduier et Kex mena.
which Bedivere and Kay led

Cil virent que pou conquerroient
Those saw that little they-would-conquer
et que Romain trop se tenoient,
and that Romans too-much themselves held
par ire et par fin maltalant,
by wrath and by pure ill-will
à lor compaigne estoremant,
with their company in-battle-array
entre les Romains s'embatirent
among the Romans themselves-thrust
là où la forçor presse virent;
there where the greatest press they-saw
bien féroient Beduier et Koi
well struck Bedivere and Kay
Dex! quels barons en cort à roi!
God what barons in court of king
Quel senescal, quel botillier!
What seneschal what butler
Mult servent bien as brans d'achier,
Much they-serve well with-the blades of-steel
quex deus vasax! s'auques vesquissent
what two vassals if-longer they-had-lived
mult orent fet, et plus féissent.
much they-had done and more would-do
Mult vunt la presse derompant
Much they-go the press breaking
et mult an vont acravantant.
and many thereof go overthrowing
Et mult sunt de férir en grès,
And much they-are of striking in eagerness

et lor compaigne vint après.
and their company came after
Maint colp i ot doné et pris
Many-a blow there was given and taken
et maint navré et maint ocis;
and many-a wounded and many-a killed
li sans i corut par ruissiax,
the blood there ran by streams
li mort i gisent par monciax.
the dead there lie by heaps
Beduier s'ambat en la presse,
Bedivere himself-thrusts into the press
qui ne repose, ne ne cesse;
who not rests nor not ceases
et Kex vint après qui ne fine,
and Kay came after who not stops
maint en abat et sovine;
many thereof strikes-down and lays-on-back
se un petit se retenissent
if a little themselves they-had-held-back
et à lor gent se restrainsissent,
and to their folk themselves they-had-drawn-close
grans pris et grans los i éussent
great prize and great praise there they-would-have-had
et encore garir péussent;
and yet survive could
mais il furent trop volantif
but they were too eager
et de férir avant braidif;
and of striking forward ardent

mais ne se sorent espargnier.
but not themselves knew-how spare
La bataille valrent perchier.
The battle they-wished to-pierce
En lor grant bonté se fioient
In their great goodness themselves trusted
et en lor gent que il menoient;
and in their folk whom they led
mais une escièle ont encontrée
but a battalion they-have met
que li rois de Mede a menée,
which the king of Media has led
Bocus ot nom, paiens estoit,
Bocus he-had name pagan he-was
rices hom ert, grant gent avoit.
rich man he-was great folk he-had
Li conroi sunt à als josté,
The troops are to them joined
n'ont mie lor grant gent doté.
not-they-have at-all their great folk feared
Ce fu bataille bien férue,
This was battle well fought
et mellée bien maintenue
and melee well maintained
entre Paiens et Sarrasins
between Pagans and Saracens
et Hurupois et Angevins.
and Hurupois and Angevins

Li rois Bocus un glaive tint
The king Bocus a spear held
mal ait ses cors, qant il i vint!
ill have his body when he there came
Les deus coutes a desconfis,
The two counts he-has defeated
Beduier a féru el pis,
Bedivere he-has struck in-the breast
le fer de la lance defors
the iron of the lance outside
li fist passer parmi le cors.
to-him he-made pass through the body
Beduier ciet, li coers li part,
Bedivere falls the heart to-him breaks
l'ame s'en vait, Ihesuc le gart!
the-soul itself-thence goes Jesus it keep
Kex a trové Beduier mort,
Kay has found Bedivere dead
entalanta que il l'emport,
desired that he him-carry-off
car plus que nul home l'amot,
for more than any man him-he-loved
à tant de gent com avoir pot
with as-much of folk as have he-could
fist cels de Mede départir
he-made those of Media depart
et la place tote guerpir.
and the place all forsake

Mais al targier et à l'entendre
But at-the delaying and at the-attending
qu'il fist al cors Beduier prendre,
which-he made at-the body (of-)Bedivere taking
s'est li rois de Libe aprociés
himself-is the king of Libya approached
Sertorius qui fu iriés;
Sertorius who was angered
grant gent avoit de gent paaine
great folk he-had of folk pagan
qu'il ot de sa terre demaine,
which-he had of his land demesne
cil ont Kex navré mortelment
those have Kay wounded mortally
et ocis le miex de sa gent.
and killed the best of his folk
Il ont mult navré et féru,
They have much wounded and struck
mais il a bien le cors tenu.
but he has well the body held
De ses homes li ramanant
Of his men the remaining
l'aloient entor desfendant;
him-went around defending
porté l'ont à l'orin dragon,
carried it-have to the-golden dragon
ou Romain volsissent u non.
whether Romans would or not

Hiresgas fu niés Beduer
Hiresgas was nephew (of-)Bedivere
qui mult soloit son oncle amer:
who much was-wont his uncle to-love
de ses amis, de ses parans
of his friends of his kinsmen
prist tant que il en tot trois çans,
he-took so-many that he of-them had three hundred
à hiaumes, à haubers, à brans,
with helms with hauberks with blades
sor bons chevax fors et corans.
on good horses strong and running
Cels assambla en un conroi,
Those he-assembled in one array
puis lor a dit: venés od moi,
then to-them has said come with me
la mort à mon oncle vengier.
the death of my uncle to-avenge
Puis prist Romains à aprochier;
Then he-began Romans to approach
le roi de Mede a espié,
the king of Media he-has spied
al gonfanon l'a encercié.
by-the gonfanon him-he-has sought-out
Sor son conroi torna férant,
Upon his array he-turned striking
l'ensaigne al roi Artur criant,
the-war-cry of-the king Arthur crying
si com hom qui est forsenés,
just as man who is maddened

qui ne puet estre amesurés,
who not can be moderated
ne crient home ne rien qu'il truisse,
nor fears man nor thing that-he find
ne mais son oncle vengier puisse.
not but his uncle avenge he-may
Si compaignon od lui s'eslaissent,
His companions with him themselves-launch
escu lievent, et lances baissent,
shields they-raise and lances lower
mult en ocient et enversent,
many thereof they-kill and overturn
par desus les chaois traversent;
over above the fallen they-cross
en l'eschiele al roi se sunt mis,
into the-battalion of-the king themselves are put
qui Beduier avoit ocis.
who Bedivere had killed
Od la vertu des bons cevax
With the strength of-the good horses
qui portoient les bons vassax,
which carried the good vassals
destre et senestre vont tornant
right and left they-go turning
et Hiresgas les vet menant.
and Hiresgas them goes leading
Dusqu'al gonfanon ne cessèrent
As-far-as-the gonfanon not they-ceased
où il le roi Bocu trovèrent.
where they the king Bocus found

Hyresgas l'a bien avisé
Hiresgas him-has well marked
et son ceval i a torné;
and his horse there has turned
parmi la presse avant s'empaint
through the press forward himself-thrusts
en son le cief Bocu ataint;
on top the head Bocus he-reaches
forz fu li ber, li cos fu granz
strong was the baron the blow was great
et li branz fu durs et tranchanz.
and the blade was hard and cutting
Le hiaume fandi et quassa,
The helm he-split and broke
bien le féri et assena,
well him he-struck and aimed
dusqu'as espalles le fendi,
as-far-as-the shoulders him split
l'ame emportent li anemi.
the-soul carry-off the fiends
Et Hiresgas torna le bras,
And Hiresgas turned the arm
le cors retint avant le qas,
the body he-held-back before the fall
devant soi le met en travers,
before himself it puts in crosswise
sor son eeval le tint an vers;
on his horse it held in reverse
devant soi an travers le trest,
before himself in crosswise it draws

ains cil ne cria, ne ne brest;
ever that-one not cried nor not wailed
li chevaliers fu aïreus
the knight was wrathful
et li chevax fu viguereux.
and the horse was vigorous
Entre sa gent se mist arière
Among his folk himself put back
que alquns del païs ne l' fière.
that anyone of-the country not him strike
La presse départ et deront,
The press he-parts and breaks
si compagnon voie li font.
his companions way for-him make
Joste son oncle l'a porté
Beside his uncle it-he-has carried
tost l'a par pièce decolpé,
quickly it-he-has by piece cut-up
puis rapela ses compaignons:
then recalled his companions
venés, dist-il, fil à barons,
come said-he sons of barons
alons ocire ces Romains,
let-us-go to-kill these Romans
ces larons, ces fil à putains;
these thieves these sons of whores
la gent qui en Deu n'a créance,
the folk who in God not-has belief
n'en crestienté n'a fiance,
nor-in Christendom not-has trust

ont amené en cest païs
they-have brought into this country
por nous destruire et nos amis;
for us to-destroy and our friends
alons, ocions les Paiens
let-us-go let-us-kill the Pagans
et ausiment les Crestiens;
and likewise the Christians
od les Paiens se sont josté
with the Pagans themselves are joined
por ocire crestienté,
for to-kill Christendom
venés assaier vos vertus.
come try your strengths
Es les vous arière venus,
Behold them you back come
adont oïssiés noise et cris,
then you-might-hear noise and cries
et des espées capléis
and of-the swords hewing
hiaumes et brans estinceler
helms and blades spark
et de l'achier le fu voler.
and from the-steel the fire fly
Li bon dus de Poitiers Giutart
The good duke of Poitiers Guitart
n'aloit mie comme coarz;
not-went at-all like coward

en droit soi le champ bien maintint
in right himself the field well maintained
contre le roi d'Aufrique vint.
against the king of-Africa came
Li uns l'autre forment féri
The one the-other strongly struck
mais li rois d'Aufrique chaï;
but the king of-Africa fell
et li quens s'en passa avant,
and the count himself-thence passed forward
Aufricanz ot mors abatant.
Africans he-had dead striking-down
Holdins qui fu dus des Flamans
Holdin who was duke of-the Flemings
et qui mult fu plains de grans sens,
and who very was full of great sense
torna encontre la compaigne
turned against the company
Alifantin, un roi d'Espaigne.
(of-)Alifantin a king of-Spain
Tant se sunt entre combatu,
So-much themselves are each-other fought
et par aïr entreféru
and with fury each-other-struck
qu'ocis i fu Alifantins
that-killed there was Alifantin
et altre si li quens Holdins.
and other so the count Holdin
Ligiers, qui ert quens de Boloine.
Ligier who was count of Boulogne

Josta al roi de Babiloine.
Jousted with-the king of Babylon
Ne sai dire qui miax féri
Not I-know-how say who better struck
mais cascuns d'als l'altre abati;
but each of-them the-other struck-down
ocis fu li quens et li rois
killed was the count and the king
et ocis autre contes trois,
and killed other counts three
Balluc et Cursa et Urgent,
Balluc and Cursa and Urgent
cascuns d'als i avoit mult gent:
each of-them there had much folk
Urgens estoit de Bade sire,
Urgent was of Bath lord
et Balluc quens de Guitesire;
and Balluc count of Wiltshire
Cursa d'Ecestre quens estoit,
Cursa of-Chester count was
à cels de Gales marcissoit.
with those of Wales he-bordered
Cil furent ocis em poi d'ore
Those were killed in little of-hour
et d'ambes pars se corent sore.
and from-both sides themselves run upon
La gent que il mener devoient
The folk whom they lead were-to
et qui lor gonfanon suioient
and who their gonfanon followed

vinrent à l'eschiele fuiant,
came to the-battalion fleeing
que Gavains aloit conduisant,
which Gawain went leading
et Hoëls od lui ses compains.
and Hoel with him his companion
Tels dui vassals ne furent ains
Such two vassals not were ever
onques el siecle trespassé,
ever in-the world past
n'orent ensamble tel esté
not-had together such been
de bonté et de cortoisie,
of goodness and of courtesy
de sens et de cevalerie.
of sense and of chivalry
Cil de Bretaigne la menor
Those of Britain the lesser
erent od Hoël lor signor.
were with Hoel their lord
Lor compaignie estoit tant fière
Their company was so fierce
et hardie de tel manière,
and bold of such manner
presse ne torbe ne dotoient
press nor throng not they-feared
par tot aloient, tot perçoient.
through all they-went all they-pierced
Ces qui ainz lor homes chaçoient,
Those who before their men chased

et à milliers les cravantoient
and by thousands them overthrew
firent sanprès les dos torner
they-made straightway the backs turn
et maint en firent janbeter,
and many thereof they-made kick
o les granz cos que il donoient
with the great blows which they gave
et o la gent que il menoient.
and with the folk whom they led
Vinrent de si al gonfanon
They-came up so-far to-the gonfanon
qui porta l'aigle d'or en son.
which bore the-eagle of-gold at top
Là trovèrent l'emperéor
There they-found the-emperor
et de sa maisnie la flor;
and of his household the flower
od lui furent li gentil home
with him were the noble men
et li bon chevalier de Rome.
and the good knights of Rome
Là véissiés estor mortel,
There you-might-see fight mortal
ainc ne véistes, jo quit, tel.
ever not you-saw I think such
Chinmarc qui ert quens de Tigel
Chinmarc who was count of Tigel
ert en la compagne Hoel;
was in the company (of-)Hoel

mult estoit de grant vasselage
very he-was of great valor
et des Romains faisoient damage;
and of-the Romans they-made damage
mais uns romains qui ert à pie
but a Roman who was on foot
le jeta mort à un espie.
him threw dead with a spear
Od lui ot mort deus mil Bretons,
With him were dead two thousand Britons
de tos les meillors compagnons.
of all the best companions
Trois contes, li uns ert Jagus,
Three counts the one was Jagus
de Boloan estoit venus;
from Boloan was come
li autres fu Cecormanus
the other was Cecormanus
et li tiers quens Boclonius
and the third count Boclonius
n'ont mie en la gent Artur sis
not-have at-all in the folk (of-)Arthur six
de lor valor et de lor pris;
of their valor and of their worth
se conte fuissent, u fil de roi,
if counts they-were or sons of king
à tous tans mais, si com jou croi,
to all times more just as I believe
fu parole de lor prouesse,
were talk of their prowess

mult estoit de grant asprèce.
very it-was of great fierceness
Cil ocisent mult de Romains;
Those killed many of Romans
nus n'i venoit entre lor mains
anyone not-there came between their hands
qui n'éust la vie finée,
who not-had the life ended
ou fu à lance, ou à espée.
or were by lance or by sword
En l'eschiele l'emperéor
Into the-battalion (of-)the-emperor
s'embatirent devant les lor;
themselves-thrust before the theirs
et cil de Rome les soprisent,
and those of Rome them surprised
tos trois ensamble les ocisent.
all three together them killed
D'ire et de rage furent plain
Of-wrath and of rage were full
Houdin et ses cosins Gavain,
Hoel and his cousin Gawain
quant il la grant ocise virent
when they the great slaughter saw
que cil de Rome des lors firent;
which those of Rome of-the theirs made
por lor anemis damagier
for their enemies to-harm
et por lor compagnons vengier,
and for their companions to-avenge

se sont entré comme lion
themselves are entered like lions
entrent es bêtes à bandon;
enter among-the beasts at will
Romains destruient et abatent
Romans they-destroy and strike-down
et à grant glaive les départent.
and with great sword them scatter
Cil de Rome fort se desfendent,
Those of Rome strongly themselves defend
maint colp i reçoivent et randent;
many-a blow there receive and render
bien tindrent, et bien sont tenu,
well they-held and well are held
bien fièrent, et bien sont féru.
well they-strike and well are struck
Gavains fut de mult grant aïr,
Gawain was of very great fury
onques ne fu las de férir,
ever not was weary of striking
tostans est fresce sa vertu,
always is fresh his strength
onques sa main lasse ne fu;
ever his hand weary not was
forment aloit Romains chaçant
greatly went Romans chasing
et sa proesce demostrant;
and his prowess showing
par tot l'emperéor querroit,
through all the-emperor he-sought

od lui combatre se voloit.
with him to-fight himself wished
Tant a alé et tant a fait
So-much he-has gone and so-much has done
et tant avoié et tant retrait,
and so-much advanced and so-much drawn-back
que l'emperéor a rové,
that the-emperor he-has sought
chascuns a bien l'altre avisé:
each has well the-other marked
l'empereor a Gavain véu
the-emperor has Gawain seen
et Gavain a lui connéu.
and Gawain has him known
De grant vertu s'entreférirent,
With great strength each-other-struck
mais fort furent, quant ne caïrent.
but strong they-were since not they-fell
Li empereres fu bien fors
The emperor was very strong
et hardis et de grant esfors,
and bold and of great effort
engignos et de grant proece;
cunning and of great prowess
et mult par ot joie et liece
and very much had joy and gladness
que à Gavain se combatoit
that with Gawain himself he-fought
dont si grans renomée estoit;
whereof so great renown was

si s'en pooit vis eschaper
if himself-thence he-could alive escape
à Rome s'en valroit vanter.
at Rome himself-thereof he-would boast
Haucent les braz, les escuz lièvent,
They-raise the arms the shields lift
de mervelleus cos s'entrefièrent;
with marvelous blows each-other-strike
mult s'engoissent et mult se hastent
much themselves-strain and much themselves hasten
et as espées s'entretastent;
and with-the swords each-other-try
li uns forment l'autre requiert
the one strongly the-other attacks
et li uns l'autre formant fiert.
and the one the-other strongly strikes
Des escus volent les asteles
From-the shields fly the splinters
et des aciers les estencèles:
and from-the steels the sparks
fièrent desus, fièrent desous,
they-strike above they-strike below
et mult estoient andui prous.
and very were both valiant
S'il éussent le camp commun
If-they had the field shared
tost fust la fin faite de l'un.
soon were the end made of the-one
Mais cil de Rome recovrèrent,
But those of Rome recovered

à l'aigle d'or se rasamblèrent
at the-eagle of-gold themselves reassembled
l'emperéor ont socoru,
the-emperor they-have succored
por poi qu'il ne l'orent perdu.
for little that-they not him-had lost
Les Bretons ont arière mis
The Britons they-have back put
et tot le camp sor els porpris.
and all the field over them occupied
Artur vit sa gent resortir,
Arthur saw his folk fall-back
et cil de Rome resbaldir,
and those of Rome take-heart
et le camp contre lui porprendre,
and the field against him occupy
ne pot ne ne valt plus atendre,
not could nor not wished more to-wait
od sa compaigne vint criant:
with his company came crying
que faites vous, alés avant,
what do you go forward
véés moi ci devant ester
see me here before stand
gardés ne's en laiés aler.
take-care not-them thence you-let go
Jo sui Artur qui vous condui,
I am Arthur who you lead
qui por home de camp ne fui;
who for man from field not flee

suiés moi, jo ferai la voie,
follow me I shall-make the way
gardés que nul ne s'i recroie.
take-care that anyone not himself-there give-up
Ramenbre vous de vos bontés
Remember you of your goodnesses
que tant home venqus avés;
that so-many men vanquished you-have
jà de cest camp vis ne fuirai
ever from this field alive not I-shall-flee
devant que venqus les arai.
before that vanquished them I-shall-have
Dont véissiés Artur combatre,
Then you-might-see Arthur fight
et Romains férir et abatre,
and Romans strike and fell
et escus et helmes percier,
and shields and helms pierce
testes et bras et poins trenchier;
heads and arms and fists cut
Chalabrun tint tote sanglente,
Caliburn he-held all bloody
qui il consuit mort le cravente.
whom he overtakes dead him overthrows
Ne puis ses cols metre en escrit,
Not I-can his blows put in writing
à cascuns colp un en ocit;
with each blow one thereof he-kills

si com lions que fains destraint
just as lion which hunger torments
ocit bestes quanqu'il ataint,
kills beasts whatever-it reaches
tot ansement li bons rois fait,
all likewise the good king does
nul n'en espargne, n'en n'i lait;
anyone not-thereof he-spares nor-thereof not-there leaves
que il pot navrer et férir,
whom he could wound and strike
nus mire ne le pot garir.
any doctor not him could heal
De sa voie s'en fuit tuit,
From his way themselves-thence flee all
nus n'i remaint grant ne petit.
anyone not-there remains great nor small
Le roi de Libe a conséu,
The king of Libya he-has overtaken
Sertor a non, rices hom fu,
Sertorius has name rich man he-was
le cief li a del bu sevré,
the head of-him he-has from-the trunk severed
à la terre l'a craventé,
to the earth him-has thrown
cil caï mort, bien le consut.
that-one fell dead well him overtook
Polibètes en piés estut,
Polibetes on feet stood
un rices rois de Bitenie,
a rich king of Bithynia

c'est une tere empaienie;
it-is a land paganized
Artus l'a près de soi trové,
Arthur him-has near to himself found
mervillos colp li a doné.
marvelous blow to-him has given
Des espalles le cief li rest,
From-the shoulders the head of-him he-shaves
mort l'abati, iloc remest.
dead him-struck-down there he-remained
De l'ame fu li cors tuit vuit
Of the-soul was the body all empty
et li cevaus partout s'enfuit;
and the horse everywhere himself-thence-fled
dont oissiés crier Artur:
then you-might-hear cry Arthur
Romain s'en vunt à maléur.
Romans themselves-thence go to misfortune
As cos Artur et à ses dis
At-the blows (of-)Arthur and at his words
ont Breton Romains envaïs;
have Britons Romans attacked
et Romain encontre s'angoissent,
and Romans against themselves-strain
espée traient, lances froissent;
swords they-draw lances break
des Bretons fort damage font,
of-the Britons strong damage they-make
contre les lor à force vont.
against the theirs by force they-go

Artur les voit, mult li en croist,
Arthur them sees much to-him thereof grows
de Calabrun grans cols lor moist;
with Caliburn great blows to-them he-deals
mult en ocist et abati,
many thereof he-killed and struck-down
à la terre maint en caï.
to the earth many thereof fell
Et l'emperère n'i sojorne,
And the-emperor not-there rests
la gent Artur ocit aorne.
the folk (of-)Arthur he-kills in-a-row
Il ne se pueent encontrer,
They not themselves can meet
ce poise lor, car mult fu ber;
this grieves them for very he-was baron
tant par est entr'als fors li presse
so much is between-them strong the press
et li mellée si engresse.
and the melee so thickens
Bien fièrent cist, bien fièrent cil,
Well strike these well strike those
tost an véissiez morir mil;
soon thereof you-might-see die thousand
fièrement s'antrecombatoient
fiercely each-other-fought
et fièrement s'antreocioient.
and fiercely each-other-killed
Ne savoit nus hom qui vaincroit,
Not knew any man who would-conquer

ne qui venqus ou mort seroit.
nor who vanquished or dead would-be
Quant Morind vint à la compaigne
When Morud came to the company
qui ert el bois, sor la montaigne,
which was in-the wood on the mountain
où Artur recovré poroit
where Arthur recovery could
se de sa gent li mescaoit.
if of his folk to-him ill-befell
Sis mil et sis cens chevaliers
Six thousand and six hundred knights
et soissante sis à deffers,
and sixty six on destriers
od clers hiaumes et à haubers,
with bright helms and with hauberks
od droit es lances et od fers,
with straight the lances and with irons
de la montaigne descendirent
from the mountain descended
que cil de Rome nul n'en virent;
that those of Rome anyone not-thereof saw
deriers lor vinrent, si's fendirent
behind them they-came so-them split
la bataille et la dérompirent,
the battle and it broke
et uns des autres départirent
and ones from-the others parted
et plus de mil en abatirent.
and more than thousand thereof struck-down

As cevax les vont désolant
With-the horses them go trampling
et as espées ociant.
and with-the swords killing
N'i porent puis Romain durer,
Not-there could after Romans endure
car n'i pooient fuisoner.
for not-there they-could suffice
A grant rote s'an vont fuiant
In great rout themselves-thence go fleeing
les uns les autres cravantant.
the ones the others overthrowing
L'emperère fu abatus,
The-emperor was struck-down
el cors d'une lance férus;
in-the body with-a lance struck
ne sai dire qui l'abati,
not I-know-how say who him-struck-down
ne qui del glaive le féri;
nor who with-the spear him struck
en la presse fu entrepris
in the press he-was caught
et iloc fu trovés ocis.
and there was found killed
Entre les monz fu mors trovez
Among the dead was dead found
el cors d'une lance navrez.
in-the body by-a lance wounded

Mordred's Treason, and Camlann

XIII

The Romans flee and are cut down. Arthur buries his dead, sends Lucius's body to Rome as the only tribute it will have, and buries Kay at Chinon, Bedivere at Bayeux, Holdin in Flanders, and Ligier at Boulogne. Wintering in Burgundy, he learns Mordred has seized his realm and married the queen; Mordred calls in Cheldric's Saxons. Arthur lands at Romney, where Gawain and Aguisel are killed, routs Mordred, who flees from Winchester to Cornwall, and gives Scotland to Yvain; Guinevere takes the veil at Caerleon. At Camlann Mordred is killed and the Round Table perishes; Arthur, mortally wounded, is carried to Avalon, where the Britons await him, and Wace will say no more of his end than Merlin did. Arthur gives the realm to Constantine, Cador's son.

Li Romain et cil d'orient,
The Romans and those of-the-east
et li autre communément,
and the others commonly
plus que le pas trestot s'enfuient
more than the walk all themselves-thence-flee
Breton les cacent et destruient;
Britons them chase and destroy
13250 des Romains ocire se lassent,
of-the Romans killing themselves weary
par desus les Romains trespassent:
over above the Romans they-pass
li sans s'en corut à ruissiax
the blood itself-thence ran in streams
et li mort gisent à monciax.
and the dead lie in heaps

Li palefroi et li desfer
The palfreys and the destriers
en vont par le camp estraier,
thence go through the field astray
dont li signor estoient mort,
whereof the lords were dead
là n'avoit joie ne deport.
there not-was joy nor sport
Artus se fait joios et lies
Arthur himself makes joyful and glad
qui l'orgoil de Rome a plaissies;
who the-pride of Rome has bent
grasses en rant al roi de glore
thanks thereof he-renders to-the king of glory
par qui il a éu victore.
by whom he has had victory
Cerquier a fait tos les ocis,
Search he-has made all the killed
tos les siens et tos ses amis;
all the his-own and all his friends
les uns fist iloc enterer,
the ones he-made there bury
et les autres en fist porter.
and the others thence made carry
Par la contrée, as abéies,
Through the country in-the abbeys
en fist enterrer grant parties.
thereof he-made bury great parts

Le cors fist à l'emperéor
The body he-made of the-emperor
prandre et garder, à grant honor;
take and keep with great honor
à Rome em biere l'envoia,
to Rome in bier it-sent
et à cels de Rome manda
and to those of Rome sent-word
qu'altre tréu ne lor donroit
that-other tribute not to-them he-would-give
de Bretaigne que il tenoit,
of Britain which he held
et qui tréu li requerroit
and who tribute of-him would-demand
autretel li anvoieroit.
such-another to-him he-would-send
Kex qui estoit jà mort navrés,
Kay who was already to-death wounded
fu dedens Chinon enterrés,
was within Chinon buried
qu'il fist et compassa Chinon
for-he made and laid-out Chinon
et de Kex reçut il le non.
and from Kay received it the name
Là fu enterés u boscage
There he-was buried in-the woodland
joste Cinon en l'ermitage.
beside Chinon in the-hermitage
A Baiues, en Normendie,
At Bayeux in Normandy

ù il avoit la signorie,
where he had the lordship
ont Beduier enseveli
they-have Bedivere buried
de fors la porte, vers midi.
from outside the gate toward south
Holdins fu en Flandres portés
Holdin was into Flanders carried
et en Chaverne enterés.
and in Chaverne buried
Ligiers fu portés à Bologne.
Ligier was carried to Boulogne
Artus qui remest en Borgogne,
Arthur who remained in Burgundy
tot l'iver iloc sojorna
all the-winter there sojourned
et la tere raséura.
and the land reassured
En esté valt Mont Giu passer
In summer he-wished Mont Joux to-cross
et à Rome quida aler;
and to Rome he-thought to-go
mais Mordret l'en a retorné,
but Mordred him-thence has turned-back
oiés quel honte et quel vilté:
hear what shame and what vileness
ses niés, fils sa soror estoit
his nephew son (of-)his sister he-was
et en garde Bretaigne avoit;
and in keeping Britain had

tot son rene li ot livré,
all his realm to-him he-had delivered
à garder li ot commandé,
to keep to-him he-had commanded
et Mordret li valt tot tolir,
and Mordred from-him wished all to-take
assés le déust mius servir,
much him he-ought better serve
de tos les homes prist homages,
of all the men he-took homages
et de tos les castiax ostages.
and of all the castles hostages
Après ceste grant félonie
After this great felony
fist encor forçor vilenie,
he-did yet greater villainy
que contre crestiane loi
that against Christian law
prist à soi la fame le roi;
he-took to himself the wife (of-)the king
feme son oncle, son signor
wife (of-)his uncle his lord
prist à fame, s'in fist s'oissor.
he-took to wife so-of-her made his-spouse
Artus oï, et bien savoit
Arthur heard and well knew
que Mordret foi ne li portoit:
that Mordred faith not to-him bore
son raine trait, sa fame a prise,
his realm betrayed his wife he-has taken

ne li fait mie bel servise.
not to-him does at-all fair service
Sa gent à Hoel mi parti,
His folk with Hoel in-half he-divided
France et Borgogne li guerpi;
France and Burgundy to-him he-left
si li rova que tot gardast
so him asked that all he-keep
et que il par tost païs fermast.
and that he through all country fortify
En Bretaigne retorneroit,
Into Britain he-would-return
cels des illes à soi menroit,
those of-the isles with himself would-lead
et de Mordret se vengeroit
and on Mordred himself would-avenge
qui sa feme et s'onor tenoit.
who his wife and his-honor held
Tot son congiest po priseroit
All his conquest little he-would-prize
se Bretaigne son fié perdroit.
if Britain his fief he-would-lose
Mius velt laier Rome à conquerre
Better he-wishes to-leave Rome to conquer
que perdre sa demaine terre;
than lose his demesne land
à brief terme s'en retolroit
in short term himself-thence he-would-come-back
et à Rome, ce dist, iroit.
and to Rome this he-said would-go

Ensi vint Artus à Guingant,
Thus came Arthur to Wissant
del parjure Mordret plaignant
of-the perjury (of-)Mordred complaining
qui le tornoit de son conquest;
who him turned from his conquest
son navie ot à Guingant prest.
his fleet he-had at Wissant ready
Mordrès sot d'Artu le repaire,
Mordred knew of-Arthur the return
ne valt, ne ne daigna pais faire:
not wished nor not deigned peace to-make
Chedric de Saissone ot mandé,
Cheldric of Saxony he-had summoned
et Chedric li ot amené
and Cheldric to-him had brought
set cent nés bien apparillies
seven hundred ships well equipped
de chevalier tote cargies.
with knights all loaded
Et Mordret lor ot créanté
And Mordred to-them had granted
et en éritage doné,
and in heritage given
por lor aïe et por lor force,
for their aid and for their force
dès le Hombre dusqu'en Escoce,
from the Humber as-far-as-into Scotland
et quanque ot en Kent Hengist,
and whatever had in Kent Hengist

quant Vortiger sa fille prist.
when Vortigern his daughter took
Quant Mordret ot sa gent jostée,
When Mordred had his folk joined
assés fu bele l'asamblée
quite was fair the-assembly
entre la gent qui fu paiene
between the folk which was pagan
et celi qui fu crestiene,
and that which was Christian
ot od haubers et od destriers
he-had with hauberks and with destriers
soisante mil chevaliers.
sixty thousand knights
Aséur quide Artur atandre
Secure he-thinks Arthur to-await
et li vaura les pors desfandre;
and him will-wish the ports to-forbid
ne li velt pas son droit guerpir
not to-him wishes at-all his right to-yield
si s'an devroit bien repentir,
so himself-thereof he-ought well repent
et il se sent à tant copable
and he himself feels so much guilty
que de pais faire seroit fable.
that of peace making would-be fable
Artus fist sa gent aprester,
Arthur made his folk make-ready
tant en mena ne sai nombrer.
so-many thereof he-led not I-know-how number

A Romenel valt ariver
At Romney he-wished to-arrive
et là quida ses nés mener;
and there thought his ships to-lead
mais ains qu'il fust à tere issus
but before that-he was to land gone-out
fu Mordrès contre lui venus
was Mordred against him come
od ses homes et od sa gent
with his men and with his folk
qui od lui sont par sairement.
who with him are by oath
Cil des nés d'ariver s'esforcent
Those of-the ships of-arriving themselves-strive
et cil des rives les desforcent.
and those of-the shores them resist
Mult s'i asaient d'ambes pars,
Much themselves-there assail of-both sides
traient sajetes, lancent dars;
they-shoot arrows hurl darts
ventres, corailles, et pis percent
bellies entrails and breasts they-pierce
et crièvent els, si li adrecent.
and they-burst eyes so at-them aim
Cels des nés convint tant entandre
Those of-the ships it-behooved so-much attend
à faire as nes la terre prandre;
to make to-the ships the land take

férir, ne issir ne lor list
strike nor go-out not to-them is-allowed
et s'emprès moert cil qi en ist:
and straightway dies that-one who thence goes-out
souvent crient, souvent cancelent,
often they-cry often stagger
traïtors ceux defors apelent.
traitors those outside they-call
As nes descargier, al rivage
At-the ships unloading at-the shore
ot Artus mervillos damage.
had Arthur marvelous damage
Maint en i ot colpé les ciés,
Many of-them there were cut the heads
ocis i fu Gavains ses niés;
killed there was Gawain his nephew
Artus ot de lui dolor grant
Arthur had of him grief great
car il n'amoit nul home tant.
for he not-loved any man so-much
Aguisel fu od lui ocis
Aguisel was with him killed
qui mult avoit d'armes grans pris.
who much had of-arms great prize
Des autres i ot ocis maint
Of-the others there were killed many
que li bons princes Artus plaint;
whom the good prince Arthur laments

tant com il furent u sablon
as-long as they were on-the sand
n'i fist Artus se perdre non,
not-there did Arthur except lose not
mais puis qui furent al terain
but after that-they were on-the ground
et furent ensamble al plain,
and were together on-the plain
n'i pot avoir li gent durée
not-there could have the folk endurance
que Mordret avoit amenée.
which Mordred had brought
Mordrès ot hommes conqueltis
Mordred had men gathered
em pais et em repos norris;
in peace and in rest nurtured
ne s'i sorent pas si covrir
not themselves-there knew-how at-all so cover
ne si ester, ne si férir
nor so stand nor so strike
comme la gent Artus savoit
as the folk (of-)Arthur knew
qui en guerre norie estoit.
which in war nurtured was
Artus et li sien i feroient
Arthur and the his-own there struck
qui à glaive les ocioient.
who by sword them killed
A vinz et à cent les ocistrent;
By twenties and by hundreds them they-killed

mult en tuèrent, mult en pristrent.
many of-them they-slew many of-them they-took
Grans fu l'ocise, graindor fust
Great was the-slaughter greater it-would-have-been
se li presse ne lor néust.
if the press not them had-harmed
Li jor failli et la nuiz vint,
The day failed and the night came
Artus s'estut, sa gent retint. 13405
Arthur himself-halted his folk held-back
Li gent Mordret torna en fuie,
The folk (of-)Mordred turned in flight
nus n'atent que on le conduie,
anyone not-awaits that one him lead
nus n'i prandoit d'altrui conroi,
anyone not-there took of-another's care
cascuns pensoit de garir soi.
each thought of saving himself
Mordrès s'enfui tote nuit, 13410
Mordred himself-thence-fled all night
mais n'a recet où il s'apuit:
but not-has refuge where he himself-lean
à Londres quida remanoir,
at London he-thought to-remain
mais cil ne li valrent recevoir.
but those not him wished to-receive
Tamise et l'eve trespassa,
Thames and the-water he-crossed
dusqu'à Wincestre ne fina; 13415
as-far-as Winchester not ceased

iloc estut et demora,
there he-stood and stayed
et iloc ses amis manda.
and there his friends summoned
Des citéains prist féutés
Of-the citizens he-took fealties
et ostages et séurtés,
and hostages and sureties
que pais et foi li porteront
that peace and faith to-him they-will-bear
à lor pooir le maintenront.
to their power him will-maintain
Artus n'a cure de sojor
Arthur not-has care of rest
qui à Mordret a grant haor;
who to Mordred has great hatred
d'Aguisel a grant dol éu
of-Aguisel he-has great grief had
et de Gavain qu'il a perdu.
and of Gawain whom-he has lost
Grans fu li dels de son neveu,
Great was the grief for his nephew
le cors fist metre ne sai u;
the body he-made put not I-know where
ainc hom ne sot u il fu mis,
ever man not knew where it was put
ne qui l'ocist, ce m'est avis.
nor who him-killed this to-me-is opinion

Son mal talant torna et s'ire
His ill will turned and his-wrath
a Mordret se l' pooit destruire;
upon Mordred if him he-could destroy
à Guincestre le vint suiant,
to Winchester him came following
de totes pars gent somonant.
from all sides folk summoning
La cité volt faire aségier
The city he-wished to-make besiege
et ses homes entor logier;
and his men around lodge
mais quant Mordrès esgarda l'ost
but when Mordred beheld the-host
qui la cité environ clost,
which the city around closes
semblant fist que se combatroit,
show he-made that himself he-would-fight
et que combatre se voloit;
and that to-fight himself wished
car se longement ert assis
for if long he-was besieged
n'en partiroit qu'il ne fust pris;
not-thence he-would-part that-he not were taken
il sot bien s' Artus le tenoit
he knew well if Arthur him held
que jà vis n'en escaperoit.
that ever alive not-thence he-would-escape

Tos ses homes fist asambler
All his men he-made assemble
et tot isnelement armer,
and all quickly arm
par conrois les fist establir
by troops them he-made establish
et à combatre fors issir.
and to fight out go
Mais luès qu'il furent fors issu
But as-soon that-they were out gone
cil de l'ost i sunt acoru;
those of the-host there are run-up
semprès i ot maint colp doné
straightway there was many-a blow given
et maint féru et maint versé;
and many-a struck and many-a overturned
à Mordret prist à mescaoir,
to Mordred it-began to go-ill
n'i pot sa gent fuison avoir.
not-there could his folk sufficiency have
Mais il pansa de garir soi,
But he thought of saving himself
mult ot mesfait, si crient le roi.
much he-had misdone so fears the king
Tos ses privés et ses noris
All his intimates and his nurslings
et cels qu'Artus a plus haïs
and those whom-Arthur has most hated
assambla tot privéement,
he-assembled all privately

combatre laissa l'altre gent;
fight he-left the-other folk
vers Hantone prist un sentier,
toward Southampton he-took a path
ainc ne fina dusqu'al gravier.
ever not ceased as-far-as-the shingle
Estirmans prist et mariniers,
Helmsmen he-took and mariners
par pramesses et par loiers
by promises and by wages
en mer les fist al vent empaindre
into sea them he-made to-the wind thrust
que Artus ne l' péut ataindre;
that Arthur not him could reach
en Cornuaille l'ont conduit,
into Cornwall him-they-have led
grant paor a, volentiers fuit.
great fear he-has willingly he-flees
Li rois Artus Guincestre assist;
The king Arthur Winchester besieged
la gent conquist, le chastel prist.
the folk conquered the castle took
A Ivain le fil, Urien
To Yvain the son (of-)Urien
qui de la cort estoit mult bien,
who of the court was very well
dona Escoce en héritage
he-gave Scotland in heritage
et Ivain l'en a fait homage;
and Yvain to-him-thereof has done homage

nies Aguisel avoit esté,
nephew (of-)Aguisel he-had been
si clamoit droit en la cité.
so claimed right in the city
Et cil n'avoit ne fil ne fene
And that-one not-had neither son nor wife
qui sor Ivain préist le regne.
who over Yvain should-take the realm
Ivains fu de mult grant valor,
Yvain was of very great valor
de grant pris et de grant honor,
of great worth and of great honor
et mult fu prisiés. De la guerre
and much was esteemed Of the war
que Mordret fist en Engleterre
which Mordred made in England
la roine sot et oï,
the queen knew and heard
que Mordret tante fois fui;
that Mordred so-many times fled
ne se pooit d'Artus desfandre,
not himself could from-Arthur defend
ne ne l'osoit en camp atandre:
nor not him-dared in field await
à Euroïc ert à sojor,
at York she-was in sojourn
en pensé fu et en tristor.
in thought she-was and in sadness

Membra lui de la vilenie
It-came-to-mind-to her of the villainy
que por Mordret se fu honie;
that for Mordred herself was shamed
le roi avoit deshonoré
the king she-had dishonored
et son neveu Mordret amé.
and his nephew Mordred loved
Contre loi l'avoit esposée,
Against law her-he-had wedded
s'in estoit honie et dampnée;
so-thereof she-was shamed and damned
mius vausist morte estre que vive,
better she-would-wish dead to-be than alive
mult en estoit morne et pensive.
very thereof she-was sad and pensive
A Karlion s'en est fuie,
To Caerleon herself-thence is fled
s'in entra en une abaïe,
so-there entered into an abbey
iloc devint none velée;
there she-became nun veiled
tote sa vie i fu celée.
all her life there was hidden
Ne fu oïe, ne véue,
Not was heard nor seen
ne fu trovée, ne séue.
not was found nor known

Por la vergogne del mesfait
For the shame of-the misdeed
et del pécié qu'ele avoit fait.
and of-the sin which-she had done
Cornuaille a Mordrès tenue,
Cornwall has Mordred held
13505 l'autre tere a tote perdue;
the-other land he-has all lost
par mer et par terre envoia,
by sea and by land he-sent
Sarrasins et paiens manda.
Saracens and pagans summoned
Manda Irois, manda Norois,
He-summoned Irish he-summoned Norwegians
et les Saisnes et les Danois,
and the Saxons and the Danes
13510 et tous cels qui Artur haoient
and all those who Arthur hated
et qui son service cremoient.
and who his service feared
Assés lor pramist et dona,
Plenty to-them he-promised and gave
si com li hom qui besoing a.
just as the man who need has
Artus fu dolans et iriés
Arthur was grieved and angered
13515 qui de Mordret ne fu vengiés,
who on Mordred not was avenged

mult li paisa del traïtor
much him grieved of-the traitor
qui en sa tere est à sojor.
who in his land is in sojourn
En Cornuaille est gent atret
Into Cornwall is folk drawn
et plus se paine qu'il en et;
and more himself strives that-he of-them have
car encor il lui tend entoise,
for still he at-him aims blow
Artus le sot, forment li poise.
Arthur it knew greatly him grieves
Sa gent somont de si à l'Hombre,
His folk he-summons from here to the-Humber
tant en i ot nus n'en sot nombre;
so-many of-them there were anyone not-thereof knew number
grans fu li os que li rois ot,
great was the host which the king had
là quist Mordret où il le sot.
there sought Mordred where he him knew
Ocire voloit et destruire
To-kill he-wished and to-destroy
son traitor et son parjuire;
his traitor and his perjurer
et Mordrès n'ot de fuir qure,
and Mordred not-had of fleeing care
mius se velt mettre en aventure,
better himself wishes to-put in venture

et en abandon de morir
and in hazard of dying
que tante fois de camp fuir.
than so-many times from field flee
Joste Camblan fu li bataille,
Beside Camlann was the battle
à l'entrée de Cornuaille.
at the-entrance of Cornwall
Par grant ire fu assamblée,
With great wrath it-was joined
et par grant maltalant jostée,
and with great ill-will engaged
et par grant ire fu emprise,
and with great wrath was undertaken
et mult i ot fait grant ocise.
and very there was made great slaughter
Ne sai dire qui mius le fist,
Not I-know-how say who better it did
ne qui perdi, ne qui conquist,
nor who lost nor who conquered
ne qui caï, ne qui estut,
nor who fell nor who stood
ne qui venqui, ne qui morut.
nor who won nor who died
Mais grans fu d'ambes pars li perte,
But great was of-both sides the loss
des mors fu li tere coverte
with-the dead was the land covered
et del sanc des ocis sanglante.
and with-the blood of-the killed bloody

La péri la bele jovante
There perished the fair youth
que rois Artus avoit norie
which king Arthur had nurtured
et de pluisors teres coillie;
and from many lands gathered
et cil de la Table Roonde
and those of the Table Round
dont tex los fu par tot le monde.
whereof such praise was through all the world
Ocis fu Mordrès en l'estor
Killed was Mordred in the-fight
et de ses homes li pluisor,
and of his men the most
et de la gent Artur la flor
and of the folk (of-)Arthur the flower
et li plus fort et li millor.
and the most strong and the best
Artus, se l'estore ne ment,
Arthur if the-history not lies
fu navrés el cors mortelement;
was wounded in-the body mortally
en Avalon se fit porter
to Avalon himself he-made carry
por ses plaies médiciner.
for his wounds to-heal
Encor i est, Breton l'atandent,
Still there he-is Britons him-await
si com il dient et entandent;
just as they say and understand

de là vandra, encor puet vivre.
from there he-will-come still he-can live
Maistre Gasse qui fist cest livre,
Master Wace who made this book
n'en valt plus dire de sa fin
not-thereof wished more to-say of his end
qu'en dist li profètes Merlin.
than-thereof said the prophet Merlin
Merlins dist d'Artus, si ot droit,
Merlin said of-Arthur so had right
que sa fin dotose seroit.
that his end doubtful would-be
Li profete dit verité:
The prophet says truth
tostans en a l'on puis doté
always thereof has one since doubted
et dotera, ce crois, tos dis,
and will-doubt this I-believe all days
où il soit mors, où il soit vis.
whether he be dead or he be alive
Porter se fist en Avalon,
Carry himself he-made to Avalon
por voir, puis l'incarnation,
for truth after the-incarnation
sis cens et quarante deus ans;
six hundred and forty two years
damage fu qu'il not enfans.
pity it-was that-he not-had children

Al fil Cador de Costentin
To-the son (of-)Cador of Constantine
de Cornuaille, un sien cosin, 13575
of Cornwall a his-own cousin
livra son raine, si li dist
he-delivered his realm so to-him said
qu'il fust rois tant qu'il revenist.
that-he be king until that-he returned
Chil prist la terre, si la tint,
He took the land so it held
mais ainc puis Artus ne revint.
but ever after Arthur not returned

After Arthur, and Gormund

XIV

Mordred's two sons rise with the Saxons; Constantine kills one before the altar of Saint Amphibalus at Winchester and the other in a minster in London, reigns three years, and is buried at Stonehenge. Conan, Notaporus, and Malgo follow, Malgo generous to excess and given to one vice, and then Caris. Gormund, an African king's son who gave his kingdom to his brother to win one by sea, takes Ireland, and the Saxons of Northumberland call him into Britain; he ravages it, the clergy flee to Wales and Brittany, and Caris is besieged in Cirencester. There the renegade Isembard, nephew of King Louis, joins Gormund, who burns the city by tying fire to sparrows' feet. Gormund gives the land to the Saxons, and from them it takes the name of England.

Mordrès avoit deus fils bien grans, 13580
Mordred had two sons very big
bien orgillos, et bien puissans.
very proud and very mighty

Cil virent tos les barons mors,
Those saw all the barons dead
et trespassé les grans esfors;
and passed the great forces
virent d'Artus l'eslongement,
they-saw of-Arthur the-departure
virent roi fait novelment.
they-saw king made newly
Les Saisnes qu'à Mordret èrent
The Saxons who-with Mordred were
qui de la bataille escapèrent,
who from the battle escaped
ont ensamble à als aliés
have together to them allied
et tant blandis et tant priés,
and so-much flattered and so-much prayed
retenus les ont à soldées
retained them they-have at wages
et si lor ont tères donées.
and so to-them have lands given
Le mils del païs ont saisi:
The best of-the country they-have seized
li uns en Londres s'embati,
the one into London himself-thrust
li autres valt tenir Guincestre,
the other wished to-hold Winchester
eissi quidèrent signor estre,
thus they-thought lords to-be

mais Costentins les va suiant
but Constantine them goes following
qui d'als gréver se mist en grant.
who of-them harming himself put in eagerness
L'un frère à Guincestre trova;
The-one brother at Winchester he-found
en un mostier le décola
in a minster him he-beheaded
devant l'altel saint Aufibal,
before the-altar (of-)saint Amphibalus
gardés s'il fist ou bien ou mal.
judge if-he did either well or ill
Puis a l'autre frère suii;
Then he-has the-other brother followed
cil sot sa venue et oï,
that-one knew his coming and heard
en un mostier s'ala muchier,
in a minster himself-went to-hide
mais ne li pot avoir mestier,
but not him could have use
là le fist li rois décoler
there him made the king behead
le cief li fist del bu sevrer.
the head of-him made from-the trunk sever
Trois ans réna, puis fu ocis;
Three years he-reigned then was killed
ce fu dolor à ses amis.
this was grief to his friends

A Estenhenge fu portés
To Stonehenge he-was carried
et à grant honor entérés.
and with great honor buried
Conans ses niés après réna,
Conan his nephew after reigned
orgillos fu, mult se prisa.
proud he-was much himself prized
Pais ne sot tenir ne garder,
Peace not knew-how hold nor keep
sa gent faisoit entremeller;
his folk he-made quarrel
par les cités s'entremelloient
through the cities themselves-quarreled
et li baron se guerioient;
and the barons each-other warred
entre lui mesme et sa gent
between him self and his folk
avoit grant descorde sovent.
there-was great discord often
Son oncle guerroia et prist
His uncle he-warred and took
et les deus fils son oncle ocist,
and the two sons (of-)his uncle killed
por ce qu'il estoient droit oir
for this that-they were rightful heirs
si devoient le raine avoir.
so ought the realm have
Quatre ans fu rois et petit plus,
Four years he-was king and little more

emprès fu rois Notaporus.
after was king Notaporus
En son tans Saine revelèrent
In his time Saxons rebelled
tote la tere avoir quidèrent;
all the land have they-thought
as gens firent mainte moleste,
to-the folk they-did many-a harm
Dex confonde tote lor geste!
God confound all their race
Bien lor avint al commencail
Well to-them befell at-the beginning
et al roi firent maint travail;
and to-the king did many-a toil
à la parfin s'esvertua,
at the end himself-exerted
soldiers prist, gent aüna,
hirelings he-took folk gathered
ne lor laia nul herbergage
nor to-them left any lodging
dont il n'en éust bon ostage
whereof he not-thereof had good hostage
puis tint pais jusqu'à son décès.
then held peace until-to his death
Malgo ses niès regna après
Malgo his nephew reigned after
qui mult ama cevalerie,
who much loved chivalry
et mult l'usa tote sa vie.
and much it-used all his life

Les illes environ conquist
The isles around he-conquered
et les ostages de tos prist.
and the hostages of all took
De bonté et de bones mors
In goodness and in good manners
sormonta tos ses ancissors,
he-surpassed all his ancestors
forment fu biax, forment fu genz,
very he-was fair very was noble
forment ama toz ses paranz.
greatly loved all his kinsmen
Il fu larges à desmesure,
He was generous to excess
de tenir avoir n'avoit cure.
of holding wealth not-he-had care
Malgo se tint à escarni,
Malgo himself held for mocked
à desconfi et à trai
for defeated and for betrayed
le jor qu'il n'eust tant doné
the day that-he not-had so-much given
dont qui que soit li séust gré.
whereof who that be to-him knew thanks
Une seule tèce avoit male
One single quality he-had evil
dont li sodomite sont pâle;
whereof the sodomites are pale
ne sot on en lui altre vice,
not knew one in him other vice

n'il ne faisoit altre malice.
nor-he not did other malice
Et cele fu assés vilaine,
And that was quite base
honis est qui tel vie maine.
shamed is who such life leads
Quant cil fu mors et enfuis
When that-one was dead and buried
si fu après lui rois Caris.
so was after him king Caris
Puis fu Ceris rois de la tere,
Then was Caris king of the land
mais tote la perdi par guere;
but all it lost by war
dolans fu et maléuros.
grieved he-was and unfortunate
Et à tole gent anuios,
And to all folk hateful
en son tans vint la grant sorverse
in his time came the great overthrow
de paiens et de gens averse
of pagans and of folk hostile
que Guermons amena par mer;
whom Gormund brought by sea
bien en avés oï parler,
well thereof you-have heard speak
qu'il firent la destruision
that-they made the destruction
dont Bretaigne perdi son non.
whereby Britain lost its name

Guermons fu rices et poissans
Gormund was rich and mighty
et de son cors pros et vaillans,
and of his body valiant and brave
hardis et de mult fort corage
bold and of very strong heart
et mult estoit de grant linage.
and very was of great lineage
D'Aufrique fu fils à un roi
Of-Africa he-was son of a king
qui estoit de paiene loi;
who was of pagan law
la tère après son père éut
the land after his father he-had
et rois en fust, se lui pléust.
and king thereof would-be if him pleased
Mais il ne valt, ne ne daigna,
But he not wished nor not deigned
à un sien frère le dona,
to a his-own brother it gave
à un son frère jonéor
to a his brother younger
otroia sa tere et s'onor,
granted his land and his-honor
et si dist jà rois ne seroit
and so said ever king not he-would-be
se roiaume ne conqueroit;
if realm not he-conquered

par mer, se dist, iroit conquerre
by sea so he-said he-would-go to-conquer
que rois seroit en autre terre;
that king he-would-be in other land
de lui profétisa Merlins
of him prophesied Merlin
que ce seroit uns lus marins.
that this would-be a wolf of-the-sea
Mariniers prist et estirmans
Mariners he-took and helmsmen
et nés et barges et calans;
and ships and barges and lighters
cant et cinquante mil armés
hundred and fifty thousand armed
tos connéus et tos només,
all known and all named
estre sergans et chevaliers,
besides sergeants and knights
et estre tos les mariniers,
and besides all the mariners
mena Guermons à son navire.
led Gormund in his fleet
Ne sai des barges nombre dire;
Not I-know of-the barges number to-say
mult en ot et grant gent mena,
many of-them he-had and great folk led
mainte grant mer avirona,
many-a great sea he-went-round
maint ille prist, maint roi conquist,
many-a isle he-took many-a king conquered

mainte tere saisist et prist.
many-a land seized and took
Tant ala par mer naviant,
So-much he-went by sea sailing
rois venquant, terres conquerrant,
kings vanquishing lands conquering
en Irlande vint salvement.
into Ireland he-came safely
La tere prist délivrément,
The land he-took readily
d'Irlande se fit roi clamer,
of-Ireland himself made king proclaim
puis valt en Engleterre aler.
then he-wished into England to-go
Saines avoit en Engleterre
Saxons there-were in England
qui as Bretons faisoient guerre;
who on-the Britons made war
sovent l'avoient calengié
often it-they-had claimed
et por conquerre gueroié.
and for to-conquer warred
Vancastre, et Lindesie et Kent
Vancastre and Lindsey and Kent
que ot Hengist premierement,
which had Hengist first
et ce que fist ses fils Octa
and that which did his son Octa
qui en Escoce s'en ala,
who into Scotland himself-thence went

sovent avoient tot éu
often they-had all had
et sovent l'avoient perdu. 13715
and often it-they-had lost
Sovent avoient fait omages,
Often they-had done homages
sovent orent doné ostages
often they-had given hostages
que des Bretons reconnistroient
that of-the Britons they-would-acknowledge
lor fiu et que d'aus les tenroient.
their fief and that of-them them they-would-hold
Quant il avoient tot pramis, 13720
When they had all promised
homages fait, ostages mis,
homages made hostages put
tant par estoit lor foi malvaise,
so much was their faith bad
quant il avoit liu et aise;
when it had place and ease
et dès que aucuns rois moroit,
and as-soon as some king died
ou de son cors afeblissoit, 13725
or of his body weakened
semprès erent al reveler,
straightway they-were at-the rebelling
et al tolir et al rouber.
and at-the taking and at-the robbing
En Northumberlande manoient,
In Northumberland they-dwelt

là reperoient, là estoient.
there they-resorted there they-were
Quant il orent oï parler
When they had heard speak
que Guermons ert si prous et ber,
that Gormund was so valiant and baron
as Bretons pais et trive prisent
with-the Britons peace and truce they-took
entretant à Guermont tramisent.
meanwhile to Gormund they-sent
Mult li donerent et pramisent,
Much to-him they-gave and promised
si li prièrent et requisent
so him they-prayed and asked
que em Bretagne à als passast,
that into Britain to them he-should-cross
et la terre lor delivrast.
and the land to-them deliver
De lui volentiers la tenroient
Of him willingly it they-would-hold
et tos si home devenroient;
and all his men would-become
Paien erent et il paien
Pagans they-were and he pagan
et Breton erent crestien.
and Britons were Christians
Bien se devroient entr'aidier
Well themselves they-ought each-other-help
por crestienté abaissier;
for Christendom to-lower

si com il èrent d'une loi
just as they were of-one law
si devoient avoir un roi.
so they-ought have one king
Quant Guermons oï la reqeste,
When Gormund heard the request
à sa flote qu'il avoit preste,
with his fleet which-he had ready
en Nortumberlande passa,
into Northumberland he-crossed
à cels de Saisone parla.
to those of Saxony spoke
Afermé ont lor connissance,
Confirmed they-have their acquaintance
par sairement et par fiance,
by oath and by pledge
Guermons del pais delivrer
Gormund of-the country to-deliver
et as Saisnes en fiu doner;
and to-the Saxons in fief to-give
et Saine doivent lui amer
and Saxons ought him love
et bien servir et foi porter.
and well serve and faith bear
Dont prisent la terre à destruire;
Then they-began the land to destroy
Dex, quel dolor et quel ennuire!
God what grief and what harm

De bone terre et de gentil
Of good land and of noble
qui est tornée à tel escil.
which is turned to such ruin
Saisne les Aufriquains conduient,
Saxons the Africans lead
maisons ardent, teres destruient.
houses they-burn lands destroy
Les chevaliers et les vilains
The knights and the peasants
et clers et moines et nonains
and clerks and monks and nuns
cacent et batent et ocient,
they-chase and beat and kill
la loi dame Deu contralient.
the law (of-)lord God they-oppose
Là véissiés tère escillier,
There you-might-see land ravage
fames honir, homes cachier,
women shame men chase
enfans em bers esboeler,
children in cradles disembowel
murs chaïr et maisons verser,
walls fall and houses overturn
tors abatre, maisons ardoir.
towers strike-down houses burn
Caris n'ert mie del pooir,
Caris not-was at-all of-the power

ne tant ne pooit gent avoir
nor so-much not could folk have
que il osast Guermons véoir;
that he dared Gormund see
ne se pooit à lui desfandre
nor himself could against him defend
ne ne'l pooit en camp atandre.
nor not-him could in field await
Li paien vont tant porprenant,
The pagans go so-much seizing
clercs ne prestres n'i a garant;
clerks nor priests not-there has protection
des fame et d'enfans petis
of-the women and of-children little
oïssiés plusor fois grans cris.
you-might-hear several times great cries
Li bon evesque et li bon moine,
The good bishops and the good monks
li cardonal et li canone
the cardinals and the canons
n'orent séurté de lor vies,
not-had safety of their lives
maisons laient et abéies.
houses they-leave and abbeys
Cors sains et reliques emportent,
Bodies holy and relics they-carry-off
li uns les autres desconfortent,
the ones the others discomfort
en crieme et en paor sunt tuit;
in fear and in dread are all

qui plus tost pot fuir si fuit.
who most quickly could flee so flees
Fuient povre, fuient manant,
Flee poor flee rich
fuient borjois et païsant,
flee burghers and peasants
13790 fuient vilain et vavasor,
flee villeins and vavasors
et des barons tuit li plusor.
and of-the barons all the most
Tot li baron laient lor tors,
All the barons leave their towers
car nul espoir n'ont de socors
for any hope not-they-have of succor
et guerpissent cambres et sales.
and forsake chambers and halls
13795 Li un en sunt fui en Gales;
The ones thence are fled into Wales
et cil qui porent et nés ont,
and those who could and ships have
en Bretaigne Armorique vont.
into Britain Armorican go
En Cornuaille sunt remès
In Cornwall are remained
cil qui ne porent avoir nès.
those who not could have ships
13800 Guermons aloit Carris querrant,
Gormund went Caris seeking
asés sovent l'ala cherqant,
quite often him-went searching

tant qu'en Cirecestre s'a mis
until that-into Cirencester himself-has put
et Guermons l'a iloc assis;
and Gormund him-has there besieged
iloc vint Ysembars à lui
there came Isembard to him
qui aloc ne trovoit refui,
who elsewhere not found refuge
niès Looi le roi estoit
nephew (of-)Louis the king he-was
qui de France cacié l'avoit;
who from France chased him-he-had
de France l'avoit fors jeté
from France him-he-had out cast
et de son fiu désireté.
and of his fief disinherited
A Gormont li roi s'acointa,
With Gormund the king himself-acquainted
ses hom devint, Deu renoia;
his man he-became God denied
Deu renoia et sa créance
God denied and his belief
por lui vengier del roi de France.
for himself to-avenge on-the king of France
Tant fu lo chaitis decéus
So-much was the wretch deceived
et forsenés et mescréus,
and maddened and misbelieving

la loi laissa al savéor
the law he-left of-the Savior
et si reçut la paienor.
and so received the paganism
Ysenbart à Gormons promist
Isembard to Gormund promised
que s'il en France od lui venist,
that if-he into France with him came
13820 la terre lui acquiteroit
the land for-him he-would-free
et roi de France le feroit.
and king of France him would-make
Paien assisent Cirecestre,
Pagans besieged Cirencester
tex fu dedens n'i volsist estre.
such was within not-there would-wish to-be
Li paien pavillons tendirent,
The pagans pavilions pitched
13825 lor tentes et lor loges firent;
their tents and their huts made
destruite ont tote la contrée,
destroyed they-have all the country
la vitaille prise et robée.
the victuals taken and robbed
La cité ont si entor close,
The city they-have so around closed
que nus de cels issir n'en ose.
that anyone of those go-out not-thence dares

Perières fisent et berfrois
Catapults they-made and siege-towers
si's asaillirent plusor fois.
so-them assailed several times
Lor engin firent al mur traire,
Their engines they-made to-the wall draw
mais ainc ne porent engin faire
but ever not they-could engine make
que cil dedens ne contrefacent;
that those within not counter
mairiens et cloies entrelacent.
timbers and hurdles they-interlace
Le mur refont, portes afaintent,
The wall they-remake gates strengthen
le jor oevrent, la nuit se gaitent.
the day they-work the night themselves watch
Bretesces et tor apareillent,
Battlements and tower they-prepare
com li un dorment li autre veillent.
when the ones sleep the others wake
As desfenses pieres atraient,
To-the defenses stones they-draw
car de cele guerre s'esmaient.
for of that war themselves-dismay
Et cil par defors les asaillent
And those from outside them assail
qui d'als prandre bien se travaillent.
who of-them taking well themselves labor
Mais si se painent de desfendre,
But so themselves strive of defending

ne's pot Gormons à force prendre.
not-them could Gormund by force take
Quant il voit que prendre ne's puet,
When he sees that take not-them he-can
et que demorer li estuet,
and that tarry him behooves
entor la cité fist castiax
around the city he-made castles
à bretesques et à cherniax;
with battlements and with crenels
l'une en livra à Ysembart
the-one thereof he-delivered to Isembard
qui devers soi la cité gart,
who toward himself the city guard
altre livra à ses barons,
other delivered to his barons
et autre as princes des Saissons.
and other to-the princes of-the Saxons
A son oes fist faire une tor
For his use he-made make a tower
ù il estoit tot à sojor;
where he was all at rest
iluec estoit, iluec gisoit,
there he-was there he-lay
iluec jooit, iluec dormoit.
there he-played there he-slept
La gent dedens n'ert pas malvaise,
The folk within not-was at-all bad
sovent, quant il avoient aise,
often when they had ease

lor i faisoient envaïes,
to-them there they-made sallies
en abandon metent lor vies;
in hazard they-put their lives
sovant i ot grant poignéiz
often there was great charging
et sovant grant paletéiz;
and often great skirmishing
sovent en i avoit de pris,
often of-them there were of taken
et de retenus et d'ocis.
and of retained and of-killed
Et cil ariere les entoitent,
And those back them drive
mais del mur prandre mult s'esploitent.
but of-the wall taking much themselves-busy
Fierement se sunt desfendu
Fiercely themselves they-are defended
et longement se sont tenu;
and long themselves are held
et plus longement se tenissent
and more long themselves would-have-held
se cil par engin ne préissent,
if those by guile not had-taken
se fus la vile ne's présist
if fire the town not-them had-taken
qui à destruision les mist.
which to destruction them put

Cil de fors par tel tricerie
Those of outside by such trickery
qui ainc mais n'ot esté oïe,
which ever more not-had been heard
ont la cité tote enflamée,
have the city all inflamed
oiés com il l'ont alumée.
hear how they it-have lit
Moissons aroi et glu prisent,
Sparrows with-net and glue they-took
en escaille de nois fu misent
in shell of nut fire they-put
et od le fu fisent repondre
and with the fire they-made hide
ès prises de lin et de tondre,
in-the bits of flax and of tinder
as piés des moissons l'espendirent,
to-the feet of-the sparrows it-they-fastened
mervillose voisdie firent.
marvelous trick they-made
Al soir, qant vint à l'avesprer,
At-the evening when it-came to the-dusk
laièrent lor moissons aler.
they-let their sparrows go
Il s'alèrent al soir colchier
They themselves-went at-the evening to-lie
là où il soloient jochier;
there where they were-wont to-roost
ès tas de blé et es buisons,
in-the heaps of grain and in-the bushes

et es sourondes des maisons.
and in-the eaves of-the houses
Et dès que li vile escaufa
And as-soon as the town heated
li vile esprist et aluma;
the town caught and lit
Breton virent la vile ardoir,
Britons saw the town burn
flambes lever, maisons caoir.
flames rise houses fall
A combatre se conraërent,
To fight themselves arrayed
mais venqu furent que poi erent.
but vanquished they-were for few they-were
Li rois Charic se trestorna
The king Caris himself turned-away
et droit en Gales s'entorna;
and straight into Wales himself-turned
privéément sa voix tint,
privately his way he-held
ne sai dire que puis devint.
not I-know-how say what then became
Issi fu li cités brisie,
Thus was the city broken
tote destruite et escillie.
all destroyed and ravaged
Por ce que par moissons fu prise
For this that by sparrows it-was taken
et en tel manière conquise,
and in such manner conquered

là soloient jadis alqant,
there were-wont formerly some
et encor font li païsant,
and still do the peasants
la cité as moissons nommer
the city of-the sparrows to-name
por la mervelle ramenbrer,
for the marvel to-remember
que par ces oisiax fu perdue
that by these birds was lost
li cité qui tant fu tenue.
the city which so-long was held
Guermons destruit mainte cité,
Gormund destroys many-a city
et maint castel d'antiquité,
and many-a castle of-antiquity
mainte evesquie, mainte abaïe,
many-a bishopric many-a abbey
mainte yglise de grant clergie
many-a church of great clergy
qui puis ne furent restorées,
which after not were restored
ne refaites, ne reformées;
nor remade nor reformed
encore en perent les ruines
still thereof appear the ruins
et les desers et les gastines
and the deserts and the wastes
que Guermonz fist an plusors leus,
which Gormund made in several places

pour tolir as Bretons lor feus.
for to-take from-the Britons their fiefs
Quant il ot gasté le païs,
When he had wasted the country
les teres arsses, l'avoir pris,
the lands burned the-wealth taken
le raine a as Saisnes doné
the realm he-has to-the Saxons given
car il lor avoit afié
for he to-them had pledged
à donner, s'il le conquerroit,
to give if-he it conquered
et il si fist, bien lor tindroit.
and he so did well to-them he-would-hold
Cil ont la tere recoillie
Those have the land received
qui à lor oes l'ont en covie;
who for their use it-have in desire
por le linage dont cil furent
for the lineage whereof those were
qui la terre primes reçurent,
who the land first received
et puis estoient en anglé,
and then were in-a corner
dont il furent Anglois clamé,
whence they were English called
quant Vortimers les encauça
when Vortimer them chased
et en Tanet les enangla.
and into Thanet them cornered

A force del païs les mist
By force from-the country them put
et eus et lour seignor Hengist.
both them and their lord Hengist
Se firent Englois apeler
Themselves they-made English call
por lor ancestre ramembrer,
for their ancestor to-remember
qui Dex de la terre les confonde
who God of the land them confound
tant est ore semée en parfonde.
so-much is now sown in deep
Si ont Engelande apelée
So they-have England called
la terre qui lor fu donée;
the land which to-them was given
tant dit Engleterre an françois,
so-much says Engleterre in French
et dit Inguelande an englois.
and says Inguelande in English
Terre as Englois li misent non
Land of-the English to-it they-put name
ce est en l'esposition:
this is in the-exposition
dès que Brutus de Troie vint,
since that Brutus from Troy came
tos tant Bretaigne son non tint
all so-long Britain its name held
dus qu'al terme que je vou di,
until that-to-the term which I to-you tell

que par Guermont son nom perdi,
that by Gormund its name lost
si ot noviax habitéors,
so it-had new inhabitants
noviax rois et noviax signors
new kings and new lords
qui vaurent tenir lor usage
who wished to-hold their usage
et la parole et le langage:
and the word and the language
les nons des viles destornèrent
the names of-the towns they-turned-aside
et varièrent et muèrent.
and varied and changed
Anglois vaurent rois establir,
English wished kings to-establish
mais ne se porent assentir
but not themselves could agree
que un roi solement éussent,
that one king only they-should-have
et tot à un roi sogit fussent.
and all to one king subject should-be
Ne s'acordèrent mie à un,
Not themselves-agreed at-all to one
ains firent, par consel commun,
rather they-made by counsel common
pluisors rois en pluisors contrées:
many kings in many countries

si ont les teres devisées
so they-have the lands divided
pluisors fois s'entreguerroièrent
many times each-other-warred
13965 et pluisors fois se rapaièrent.
and many times themselves reconciled
Si com cascuns plus fors estoit
Just as each more strong was
sor le plus jouene conquerroit.
over the most young he-conquered
Ainc puis n'orent Breton la terre
Ever after not-had Britons the land
que Gormons lor toli par guerre.
which Gormund from-them took by war

Augustine, and the English Kings

XV

Gormund and Isembard ravage Ponthieu; Louis routs them at Saint-Valery, killing Isembard. The English live a century without the faith, until Pope Gregory sends Augustine, who baptizes Ethelbert of Kent; near Dorchester men hang rays' tails on his robe and their kin are born tailed, and at Cernel God appears to him and a spring rises. The seven British bishops and Dyonos of Bangor refuse him; Ethelbert and Ethelfrith slaughter the monks of Bangor, but Bledic, Cadwan, and Margadu defeat Ethelfrith, and Cadwan is made king. The kings make peace; their sons, Edwin and Cadwallo, are brought up together in Brittany. When Edwin asks to be crowned beyond the Humber, Cadwallo's nephew Brian weeps on the king's head as he sleeps at the Douglas.

Oiés com Gormons esploita,
Hear how Gormund fared
com Isembars od lui ala;
how Isembard with him went
en France le voloit mener,
into France him he-wished to-lead
droit en Somme le fist sigler.
straight into Somme him made sail
Dès le Hombre s'en vint en Somme;
From the Humber himself-thence came into Somme
ilueques ocist maint prudomme
there he-killed many-a worthy-man
Isembars le mist en Pontieu,
Isembard him put into Ponthieu
le païs destruit en maint lieu.
the country destroyed in many-a place

D'iluec le vout mener en France
From-there him he-wished to-lead into France
et faire roi de grant poissance;
and make king of great puissance
li rois Loéis l'oï dire,
the king Louis it-heard say
encontre ala od son empire.
against-him went with his empire
En la terre Saint Waleri
In the land (of-)Saint Valery
al roi Gormont se combati;
with-the king Gormund himself fought
iluec fu Gormons desconfis
there was Gormund defeated
et Isembars i fu ocis.
and Isembard there was killed
Là furent ocis li paien
There were killed the pagans
si's venquirent li Xreptien,
so-them conquered the Christians
par l'ajue le roi de gloire
by the-aid (of-)the king of glory
y ot Loéis la victoire.
there had Louis the victory
Tout furent mort li Sarrasin
All were dead the Saracens
et delivré à male fin;
and delivered to evil end

issi fu la terre aquitée
thus was the land freed
et des Aufricans delivrée
and of-the Africans delivered
qui essillèrent Angleterre,
who ravaged England
et destruite fu par lor guerre.
and destroyed was by their war
Li Anglois furent tot paien
The English were all pagan
qu'il n'i avoit nul chretien;
that-it not-there was any Christian
cent ans et plus i ont esté
hundred years and more there they-have been
sans loi et sans crestienté;
without law and without Christendom
ne mostier ni ot restoré;
nor minster not-there was restored
ne tenue crestienté,
nor kept Christendom
enfant levé et baptisié,
child raised and baptized
autel sacré, ne dedié.
altar consecrated nor dedicated
Parler en oï sains Gregoire
Speak thereof heard saint Gregory
qui à cel tans fu apostoire,
who at that time was pope
Saint Augustin i envoya,
Saint Augustine there sent

clers estoit bons et mult l'ama;
clerk he-was good and much him-loved
à lui se sunt acompagnie
with him themselves are accompanied
qatre clerc saive et enraisnie.
four clerks wise and eloquent
En Tanet vint premierement
Into Thanet he-came first
et d'iloques passa en Kent;
and from-there passed into Kent
à Cantorbire l'envoia
to Canterbury him-sent
et li pules mult l'onora.
and the people much him-honored
Rois Aldebar qui Kent tenoit
King Ethelbert who Kent held
del linage as Englois estoit;
of-the lineage of-the English was
cil a Saint Augustin oï,
that-one has Saint Augustine heard
baptisiés fu, en Deu créi;
baptized he-was in God believed
emprès le roi fu sa maisnie
after the king was his household
rengenère et baptisie.
regenerated and baptized
Sains Augustins mult s'esjoï
Saint Augustine much himself-rejoiced
del pueple qui en Deu créi;
of-the people who in God believed

el nom de sainte Trinité
in-the name of holy Trinity
prist un mostier en la cité.
took a minster in the city
Par la terre aloit sermonant,
Through the land he-went preaching
et yglises et clers sacrant;
and churches and clerks consecrating
par lius trova gent de putaire
in places he-found folk of base-kind
qui à envis valrent bien faire.
who with reluctance wished well to-do
Sains Augustins mult se pena,
Saint Augustine much himself strove
et mainte fois se travilla,
and many-a time himself labored
ains qu'il se vausist atorner,
before that-they themselves would-wish to-turn
à Deu croire ne aorer.
to God believe nor worship
Quant le païs ot poralé
When the country he-had traversed
et maint en ot avironé,
and many thereof had gone-round
en Dorecestre vint esrant,
into Dorchester he-came journeying
la loi dame Deu anoncant.
the law (of-)lord God announcing
Lès Dorecestre ot une gent,
Beside Dorchester was a folk

devers nort ert procainement,
toward north it-was nearby
Sains Augustins les sermona
Saint Augustine them preached-to
et la loi Deu lor prééça.
and the law (of-)God to-them preached
Cil furent de male nature
Those were of evil nature
qui de lor sermon n'orent qure.
who of their sermon not-had care
Là ou li sains lor sermonoit
There where the saint to-them preached
et la loi Deu lor anonçoit,
and the law (of-)God to-them announced
à ses dras de tries lor pendoient
to his clothes from behind they hung
keues de raies qu'il avoient;
tails of rays which-they had
od les keues l'en envoièrent
with the tails him-thence they-sent
et bien longement le cachièrent.
and very long him chased
Et il proia nostre signor
And he prayed our lord
que d'icele grant deshonor
that of-that great dishonor
et de cele grant avilance
and of that great insult
ait en ax s'ire et demostrance.
he-have on them his-wrath and showing

Et il si orent voirement
And they so had truly
et aront pardurablement,
and will-have everlastingly
car trestot cil qui l'escarnirent
for all those who him-mocked
et qui les keues li pendirent
and who the tails on-him hung
furent coë et coës orent,
were tailed and tails had
ne onques puis perdre ne's porent.
nor ever after lose not-them could
Tot cil ont puis esté coé
All those have since been tailed
qui furent de tel parenté;
who were of such kindred
keues ont de tries en la car,
tails they-have from behind in the flesh
en ramanbrance de l'escar
in remembrance of the-mockery
qu'il firent al Deu ami
which-they made to-the God's friend
qui des keues l'orent laidi.
who with-the tails him-had insulted
Et qant il fu d'els escapés,
And when he was from-them escaped
en une valée est entrés,
into a valley is entered
a Dorecestre deus loés,
from Dorchester two leagues

à Norguest, entre deus valées,
to Northwest between two valleys
el piu d'un mont est arestés,
on-the peak of-a mount is halted
od ses compagnons tos lassés,
with his companions all weary
por reposer si aresturent,
for to-rest so they-stopped
caut et soif, orent et las furent.
heat and thirst they-had and weary they-were
Sains Augustins prist à penser
Saint Augustine began to think
comment il poroit endurer
how he could endure
la honte que l'on li faisoit,
the shame which one to-him did
en talant ot qu'il s'en iroit.
in mind he-had that-he himself-thence would-go
Dex li est aparus à tant,
God to-him is appeared at that
apertement à lui parlant:
openly to him speaking
tu es mes sers et mult me plais,
thou art my servant and much me pleasest
et mult me siet ce que tu fais.
and much me suits that which thou dost
Tien, dist-il, ton proposement
Hold said-he thy purpose
si t'en contien séurement.
so thee-therein maintain surely

Ma joie aras, jo sui o toi
My joy thou-wilt-have I am with thee
et ce que tu requiers t'otroi;
and that which thou askest to-thee-I-grant
tu troveras lé ciel olvert
thou wilt-find the heaven open
où cil entre ki bien me sert.
where that-one enters who well me serves
Sains Augustins ot Deu véu
Saint Augustine had God seen
qui mult fu bel de son salu,
to-whom very was fair of his greeting
tant l'esgarda com il plus pot
so-long him-watched as he most could
et ice tant com Deu plot.
and that so-long as God pleased
Al liu vint où Dex ot esté,
To-the place he-came where God had been
em plorant a iloc oré;
in weeping he-has there prayed
jus se mist, la tere baisa,
down himself put the earth kissed
et mainte fois s'ajenoilla;
and many-a time himself-knelt
puis a ficié son baston droit
then he-has fixed his staff upright
el liu où Dex esté avoit;
in-the place where God been had

une vaine d'eve en sailli
a vein of-water thence leapt
qui tote la place covri:
which all the place covered
l'eve sailli, li ruissiax crut,
the-water leapt the stream grew
son canel fist, aval corut.
its channel made downward ran
N'ert pas devant ce la contrée.
Not-was at-all before this the country
Herbergie ne coltivée,
Inhabited nor cultivated
porce que eve n'i soroit
because that water not-there rose
ne que fontaine n'i sordoit.
nor that spring not-there sprang
Sains Augustins Deu mercia
Saint Augustine God thanked
et ses compagnons conforta.
and his companions comforted
Le leu a Cernel apelé
The place he-has Cernel called
ù il avoit Deu esgardé.
where he had God beheld
Cernel cest non que jo ai dit,
Cernel this name which I have said
en romans est Deu voit ou vit;
in French is God sees or saw
li clercs le doivent bien savoir.
the clerks it ought well know

Cerno cernis, ce est veoir,
I-discern thou-discernest this is to-see
et Delx a non an ebreu El,
and God has name in Hebrew El
de ces deus moz est fez Cernel.
of these two words is made Cernel
Cerno et El sont ajosté,
Cerno and El are joined
li uns dist voir, l'autre dist Dé,
the one says see the-other says God
mes une letre an est ostée,
but one letter thence is removed
de la fin de Cerno sevrée;
from the end of Cerno severed
si est par une abscision
so is by an abscission
fete la composition.
made the composition
Li uns est grius, l'altre latins,
The one is Greek the-other Latin
ensi le valt Sains Augustins.
thus it wished Saint Augustine
Quant nous cest non Cernel oon,
When we this name Cernel hear
savoir et ramembrer poon
know and remember we-can
que dame Dex li demostra
that lord God to-him showed-himself
ester et parler i daigna.
stand and speak there deigned

Quant li Anglois et li Saison,
When the English and the Saxons
primes li roi, puis li baron
first the kings then the barons
orent tos recéu baptesme,
had all received baptism
enfans levés et oins de croisme,
children raised and anointed with chrism
Sains Augustins joios en fu
Saint Augustine joyful thereof was
qui mult fu bel de lor salu.
to-whom very was fair of their salvation
Ès teres que Breton tenoient
In-the lands which Britons held
qui des Englois se desfendoient,
who from-the English themselves defended
trova moines clers et abés,
he-found monks clerks and abbots
trova set évesques sacrés,
found seven bishops consecrated
et trova une arcevesquie
and found an archbishopric
dont Charlion avoit le fie.
whereof Caerleon had the fief
A Pangor ot une abéie
At Bangor there-was an abbey
ancianement establie;
anciently established
Dyonos abés en estoit,
Dyonos abbot thereof was

près de deus mil moines avoit
near of two thousand monks there-were
departis en set compagnies.
divided in seven companies
Et en cascune des parties
And in each of-the parts
avoit moines près de trois çans,
there-were monks near of three hundred
et issi orent en set covans;
and thus they-had in seven convents
del labor de lor mains vivoient
from-the labor of their hands they-lived
et ensamble se contenoient.
and together themselves kept
Sains Augustins demander fist
Saint Augustine summon made
les set évesques, si lor dist
the seven bishops so to-them said
qu'il ert de Rome légas
that-he was of Rome legate
et d'Engleterre estoit primas.
and of-England was primate
Si devoient benéiçon
So they-ought blessing
de lui reçoivre par raison,
from him receive by reason
et estre en sa subjesion.
and be in his subjection

Cil respondirent: non devon
Those answered not we-ought
quar no arcevesquie avon
for our archbishopric we-have
qui a son sié à Carlion,
which has its seat at Caerleon
par le confermement de Rome,
by the confirmation of Rome
jà n'ert mais destorné par home.
ever not-it-will-be more turned-aside by man
Ens or que tot ne l' devés faire,
And besides that all not it you-ought do
car Englois sunt no aversaire;
for English are our adversaries
de nos teres nos ont jetés
from our lands us they-have cast
et de nos fiés désérités.
and of our fiefs disinherited
Nous somes et avon esté
We are and have been
Crestien de crestien né;
Christians of Christian born
et cis sont de paiene gent
and these are of pagan folk
et converti novelement.
and converted newly
Desdaing nous semble et vile cose,
Scorn to-us seems and vile thing
et nus de nous loer ne l'ose,
and anyone of us advise not it-dares

que à celui soions soget
that to him we-be subject
qui de cels salver s'entremet.
who of those saving himself-busies
Et tot cil sunt no anemi
And all those are our enemies
par qui Englois sunt converti,
by whom English are converted
et qui à als ont compagnie
and who with them have company
et quemune parçonerie.
and common partnership
N'i pot Sains Augustins plus prandre,
Not-there could Saint Augustine more take
n'altre cose n'i pot aprandre;
nor-other thing not-there could learn
al roi Aldebar le mostra
to-the king Ethelbert it showed
et si forment se corroça.
and so greatly himself angered
Aldebar estoit rois de Kent,
Ethelbert was king of Kent
Elfroi manda, un sien parent
Ethelfrith he-summoned a his-own kinsman
qui de Nortunberlande ert rois;
who of Northumberland was king
si asamblèrent les Englois,
so they-assembled the English

lor amis et lor home tos
their friends and their men all
cels que il quidièrent à pros.
those whom they thought for valiant
De Bangor Dyonos l'abé
Of Bangor Dyonos the-abbot
et les moines de la cité,
and the monks of the city
et l'autre clergie ansement
and the-other clergy likewise
volent destruire iriement,
they-wish to-destroy angrily
quant ne lor portent révérance,
since not to-them they-bear reverence
ne crestiene obédiance;
nor Christian obedience
ne ne tiennent prophesion
nor not hold profession
fors al prelat de Carlion;
except to-the prelate of Caerleon
Saint Augustin ont refusé,
Saint Augustine they-have refused
por honte d'als et por viltée.
for shame of-them and for vileness
Chevalier et geudes mandèrent,
Knights and foot-troops they-summoned
à Leecestre s'asamblèrent;
at Leicester themselves-assembled

par là voloient trespasser
by there they-wished to-pass
et droit parmi Gales entrer.
and straight through Wales enter
Brocival la cité tenoit,
Brocival the city held
cuens ert et les Bretons amoit;
count he-was and the Britons loved
mandé avoit gent comme ber
summoned he-had folk as baron
et as Englois volt conquester.
and with-the English wished to-conquer
Et Englois se tinrent forment,
And English themselves held strongly
se's desconfirent largement;
so-them defeated widely
et mult i ot li quens damage,
and much there had the count damage
si s'anfui en un boscage.
so himself-thence-fled into a woodland
Li bon hermite li bon moine
The good hermits the good monks
et li religios canoine,
and the religious canons
cil de Bangor meesmement
those of Bangor especially
erent venu communément
were come together
proier Elfroi de Leecestre,
to-pray Ethelfrith at Leicester

et cil qui maior durent estre,
and those who greater ought be
que de cel poeple et del clergie
that on that people and on-the clergy
eussent merci et pitie.
they-might-have mercy and pity
Li home de religion,
The men of religion
qui ne voloient se bien non;
who not wished except good not
hermite, clerc, moine, vilain,
hermits clerks monks villeins
et povre gent et citéain
and poor folk and citizens
qui s'aloient atapissant,
who themselves-went hiding
de plusieurs lius vinrent avant:
from several places came forward
nus piés venoient et en langes
bare feet they-came and in wool
crier merci as gens estranges.
cry mercy to-the folk foreign
Cil furent cruel et félon
Those were cruel and felon
et orgillos comme lion.
and proud as lions
De ce dont il le desus orent
Of that whereof they the upper-hand had
le noaus firent que il porent;
the worst they-did that they could

Diex, quel dolour, Diex, quel pechie!
God what grief God what sin
N'en orent pas greignor pitié
Not-of-them they-had at-all greater pity
que lou fameilloux de brebiz,
than wolf famished of sheep
mult en firent grant tuéiz.
much of-them they-made great slaughter
Deus milliers et deux cans en prisent
Two thousands and two hundred of-them they-took
si's decolerent et ocisent.
so-them beheaded and killed
N'en est moines ne clers estors,
Not-thereof is monk nor clerk escaped
martir furent et confessors.
martyrs they-were and confessors
Puis valrent à Bangor aler.
Then they-wished to Bangor to-go
Cités destruire et deserter.
Cities destroy and desert
Breton et Galois qui's oïrent,
Britons and Welsh who-them heard
grant assamblée contr'ax firent.
great assembly against-them made
En la terre avoit trois barons
In the land there-were three barons
qui erent signor des Bretons;
who were lords of-the Britons

des autres estoient signour
of-the others they-were lords
car plus fort creut et millour.
for more strong were-held and better
Bledic de Cornuaille ert sire
Bledic of Cornwall was lord
et si tenoit de Lietesire
and so held of Lietesire
ensi comme l'eve d'Esse cort,
just as the-water of-Exe runs
dès la fontaine où ele sort
from the spring where it rises
dusqu'en la mer où el dessent.
as-far-as-into the sea where it descends
Ce tinrent Breton longement
This held Britons long
mais Adestant com il raina
but Athelstan when he reigned
oltre Tambre les envoia.
beyond Tamar them sent
Caduant ert rois de Norgales
Cadwan was king of North-Wales
et Margadud de desus Gales;
and Margadu of above Wales
tout estoit leur jusque Saverne
all was theirs as-far-as Severn
qui lez le mont court de Malverne;
which beside the mount runs of Malvern

mais Adestrant les destraint
but Athelstan them constrains
qu'en outre Gales les empaint.
that-into beyond Wales them thrusts
Chevalier et geudes mandèrent
Knights and foot-troops they-summoned
cals qui d'altre signorie erent;
those who of-other lordship were
Bledic, Caduan, Margadu
Bledic Cadwan Margadu
par grant ire par grant vertu,
with great wrath with great strength
Englois et Saines asalirent
English and Saxons assailed
qui fierement les recoillirent.
who fiercely them received
Mais Elfres fu sempres navrés,
But Ethelfrith was straightway wounded
fuiant s'en est del camp tornés;
fleeing himself-thence is from-the field turned
et mervelles i ot ocis
and marvels there were killed
de sa gent et de ses amis:
of his folk and of his friends
ocis fu en celle bataille
killed was in that battle
Bledic li quens de Cornuaille.
Bledic the count of Cornwall
Dont se sunt Breton assamblé,
Then themselves are Britons assembled

à Leecestre sunt alé;
to Leicester are gone
Cadwan qui ert savies et pros,
Cadwan who was wise and valiant
firent roi par le los de tos.
they-made king by the counsel of all
Cil a tos mandés et somons
That-one has all summoned and called
sergans, chevaliers et barons.
sergeants knights and barons
Englois qui les contés tenoient
English who the counties held
et qui roi clamer se faisoient,
and who king call themselves made
sont tot à sa merci venu
are all to his mercy come
et si home sunt devenu.
and his men are become
Puist dist qu'il passera le Hombre,
Then he-said that-he will-cross the Humber
se gent averse ne l'encombre,
if folk hostile not him-binders
Norhumberlande passera
Northumberland he-will-cross
et tot le pule destruira.
and all the people will-destroy
Le roi Elfroi, se il l'atant,
The king Ethelfrith if he him-awaits
et par force ne se desfant,
and by force not himself defends

prendra en camp ou ocira
he-will-take in field or will-kill
et vif le desiritera.
and alive him will-disinherit
Elfroi oï que il venoit
Ethelfrith heard that he was-coming
et les manaces qu'il faisoit;
and the threats which-he made
manda amis, manda parans,
he-summoned friends summoned kinsmen
manda ses homes et ses gans,
summoned his men and his folk
et les Anglois et les Saissons
and the English and the Saxons
qui guerre avoient as Bretons.
who war had with-the Britons
Grans fu li pules de deus pars
Great was the people of two sides
et de hardis et de coars.
both of bold and of cowards
Li gentil home del païs
The noble men of-the country
qui de deus pars orent amis,
who of two sides had friends
virent le mal qui avenroit
saw the ill which would-befall
et li perte qui grans seroit,
and the loss which great would-be
se li dui roi se combatoient,
if the two kings themselves fought

qui si forment s'entrehaoient.
who so greatly each-other-hated
Tant ont de l'un à l'altre alé
So-much they-have from the-one to the-other gone
tant ont consillié et parlé,
so-much have counseled and spoken
les rois firent entr'acorder
the kings they-made reconcile
et par ostages pais doner.
and by hostages peace give
Des tères a fait tel esgart
Of-the lands he-has made such award
que cascuns d'als en a sa part,
that each of-them thereof has his part
et chacun foi à l'autre port.
and each faith to the-other bear
Elfriz ait dès le Hombre en nort,
Ethelfrith have from the Humber to north
et Cathelvain del Hombre en suth,
and Cadwan from-the Humber to south
ainsi ont entr' eulx pais tenut.
thus have between them peace held
Puis ot entr' ax si grant amor
Then was between them so great love
onques n'i pot avoir grignor.
ever not-there could be greater
Lor avoir misent tot en un,
Their wealth they-put all in one
tot ert as deus, tot ert à un;
all was to-the two all was to one

forçor amor avoir ne porent.
greater love have not they-could
Femes prisent et enfans orent,
Wives they-took and children had
deus fils orent en un termine:
two sons they-had in one term
li fils Elfriz ot non Elwine,
the son (of-)Ethelfrith had name Edwin
et Cadvalan fils Cavan,
and Cadwallo son (of-)Cadwan
andui furent né en un an.
both were born in one year
Por amor des pères garder
For love of-the fathers to-keep
et por les fils faire entr' amer,
and for the sons make each-other love
furent li fil ensamble mis,
were the sons together put
ensamble nori et apris.
together nurtured and taught
D'une guise furent vestu,
In-one guise they-were dressed
ensamble ont mangié et bu;
together have eaten and drunk
d'une guise furent calcié
in-one guise were shod
et d'une guise aparillié.
and in-one guise arrayed
Quant il porent bien cevalchier,
When they could well ride

escus lever, lances baissier,
shields raise lances lower
cevaus bien poindre et retenir,
horses well spur and rein-in
espées ceindre et cols férir,
swords gird and blows strike
chevalier furent fait ensamble.
knights were made together
En Amoriche, ce me samble,
In Armorica this to-me seems
ce est en Bretaigne la menor
this is in Britain the lesser
là furent à mult grant honor.
there they-were in very great honor
Là les fist Cavalens mener,
There them made Cadwan lead
à ses parens armes doner,
to his kinsmen arms give
car si parant qui là manoient
for his kinsmen who there dwelt
Breton né de Bretons estoient.
Britons born of Britons were
Quant li père furent finé
When the fathers were ended
et de cest siecle trespassé,
and from this world passed
cascuns des fils tint s'érité
each of-the sons held his-heritage
deus ans ont puis ami esté;
two years they-have after friends been

deus ans ont puis l'amor tenue
two years they-have after the-love held
que li dui père orent éue.
which the two fathers had had
Elduine tint del Hombre en là
Edwin held from-the Humber over there
et Cadualan réna de ça.
and Cadwallo reigned on this-side
Mais Cadualan ot plus assés,
But Cadwallo had more plenty
castiax et viles et cités,
castles and towns and cities
que li rois Elduine n'ot,
than the king Edwin not-had
coroner se fist, qant il pot.
crown himself made when he could
Grans festes et grans cors tenoit,
Great feasts and great courts he-held
et noblement se contenoit.
and nobly himself bore
Elduine li pria et dist
Edwin him prayed and said
qu'il otroia et consentist
that-he grant and consent
que il péust estre sacrés
that he might be consecrated
et benéis et coronés,
and blessed and crowned

de là le Humbre où il manoit
on that-side the Humber where he dwelt
com il deça le Hombre estoit.
as he on-this-side the Humber was
Cil dist qu'il s'en consilleroit
That-one said that-he himself-thereof would-counsel
et à sa gent an parleroit,
and to his folk thereof would-speak
et ce que l'an l'an loeroit.
and that which one him-thereof would-advise
En brief terme li respondroit.
In short term him he-would-answer
Dejoste l'eve de Duglas
Beside the-water of Douglas
s'entremandèrent al trepas,
each-other-summoned at-the ford
por cele cose porvéoir
for that thing to-provide
comment el pooit mius séoir.
how it could best sit
As deus rives de l'eve furent,
At-the two banks of the-water they-were
et par messages parler durent.
and by messengers speak they-ought
En dementre que li message,
In meanwhile that the messengers
li plus viel home et li plus sage,
the most old men and the most wise

de l'un roi à l'altre passoient
from the-one king to the-other passed
qui les consax entr'aportoient,
who the counsels each-other-carried
li rois Cadualan descendi,
the king Cadwallo dismounted
somex li prist, si s'endormi.
sleep him took so himself-slept
Son cief li tint ses niès Brians
His head for-him held his nephew Brian
qui mult ert iriés et dolans
who very was angered and grieved
qu'Elduine ce li requerroit,
that-Edwin this of-him would-ask
qui onques fait esté n'avoit.
which ever done been not-had
De coros et de mal talant
Of anger and of ill will
sospira mult parfondemant;
he-sighed very deeply
de mal talant taint et enfla,
of ill will paled and swelled
epessement des els plora,
thickly from-the eyes wept
li cief le roi en est moilliés
the head (of-)the king thereof is wetted
si que il s'en est esvilliés;
so that he himself-thereof is awoken
sa main à son cief a levée,
his hand to his head he-has raised

sa face a son cief arosée.
his face he-has his head bedewed
Dont prist Briant à regarder
Then he-began Brian to regard
et Brians se crieve à plorer:
and Brian himself bursts to weep
Briant, dist li rois, que as tu?
Brian said the king what hast thou
Por quoi es tu si comméu?
For what art thou so moved
Sire, fait il, je l' vous dirai:
Lord says he I it to-you shall-tell
coreciés sui et dolor ai
angered I-am and grief I-have
que en nostre tans et par vos,
that in our time and by you
dont jo sui dolans et ploros,
whereof I am grieved and weeping
a ceste tere honor perdue.
has this land honor lost
Grant honte nous a avenue:
Great shame to-us has befallen
deus rois coronés volés faire,
two kings crowned you-wish to-make
à male cief en puissiés vous traire,
to evil end thereof may you draw
de ce que uns rois selt tenir
of that which one king is-wont to-hold
et dont l'on doit un roi servir.
and whereof one ought one king serve

Cadwallo and Edwin

XVI

Cadwallo withdraws his consent, and Edwin, who will take no refusal, defeats him and drives him to Ireland, and with the help of his Spanish soothsayer Peluis keeps him from every landing; he holds Brian's sister at York. Sailing to King Salomon in Brittany, Cadwallo falls sick of a fever at Guernsey, and when no game is found Brian cuts a piece from his own thigh and has it roasted for him as venison. While Salomon gives him two thousand knights, Brian goes to York as a pilgrim, finds his sister, kills Peluis with his iron staff, and holds Exeter against Penda of Mercia until Cadwallo comes, takes Penda, and makes him his man. Cadwallo then crosses the Humber and kills Edwin and his son in battle, and destroys their kin.

Li rois por ce que Brians dist,
The king for that which Brian said
l'otroi qu'il avoit fait desdist; 14405
the-grant which-he had made unsaid
al roi Elduine maintenant
to-the king Edwin at-once
manda qu'il n'en fera noiant,
sent-word that-he not-thereof will-do at-all
car li baron li contredient:
for the barons to-him gainsay
contre raison seroit, ce dient,
against reason it-would-be this they-say
et contre droit et contre loi 14410
and against right and against law
que ce qui doit estre à un roi,
that that which ought be to one king
et contre droiture soit donés,
and against right be given

si que cascuns soit coronés.
so that each be crowned
Ne velt son raine retaillier,
Not he-wishes his realm to-cut-up
ne sa dinité abaissier.
nor his dignity lower
Elduines qui orgillos fu,
Edwin who proud was
fierement li a respondu
fiercely to-him has answered
que jamais congié n'i querra,
that ever leave not-there he-will-seek
sans congié se coronera,
without leave himself will-crown
et altre tel francise ara
and other such franchise will-have
en son raine avoir devra.
in his realm have he-ought
Cavalans dist s'il le savoit,
Cadwallo said if-he it knew
que la corone li talroit,
that the crown from-him he-would-take
od tot le cief li abatroit;
with all the head of-him he-would-strike-off
et cil dist qu'il ne le cremoit.
and that-one said that-he not him feared
Ensi sunt par mal départi
Thus they-are by ill parted
et li uns à l'altre haï,
and the one to the-other hateful

et mult s'entresorent mal gré,
and much each-other-knew ill will
li uns a l'altre desfié.
the one has the-other defied
Elduine fu fel et iros
Edwin was félon and wrathful
et mult durement orgillos;
and very greatly proud
de ce dont il proia ce dit
of that whereof he prayed this he-says
sera proié jusqu'à petit.
will-be preyed-upon within little
Es vous esméue la guerre
Behold you stirred the war
et en escil mise la terre:
and in ruin put the land
tot li pluisor s'entreguerroient,
all the most each-other-warred
maisons saisisent, viles proient.
houses they-seize towns plunder
Cavalan grant gent assambla,
Cadwallo great folk assembled
al Humbre vint, l'eve passa;
to-the Humber came the-water crossed
Northumberlande valt passer
Northumberland he-wished to-cross
et Elduine désiréter.
and Edwin disinherit
Elduine fu de tel corage,
Edwin was of such heart

ne valt fuir por nul damage;
not wished to-flee for any damage
bien quida sa tere desfandre
well thought his land to-defend
onques trive n'i dagna prandre,
ever truce not-there deigned to-take
contre Cadualan cevalça
against Cadwallo rode
se l' venqui et desbareta.
so him vanquished and routed
Cadualan s'en voloit aler,
Cadwallo himself-thence wished to-go
et en sa tere retorner,
and into his land return
mais Elduine devant li vint
but Edwin before him came
qui la voie li clost et tint.
who the way for-him closed and held
Cavalan s'enfui aillors;
Cadwallo himself-thence-fled elsewhere
par boscages et par destors,
through woods and through byways
vers Escoce s'an vint fuiant.
toward Scotland himself-thence came fleeing
Mais Elduine le vint suiant,
But Edwin him came following
grant paine et grant anui reçut,
great pain and great harm he-received
en Irlande fuir l'estut.
into Ireland flee him-behooved

Et li rois mult bien le reçut,
And the king very well him received
grant honor li fist si com dut;
great honor to-him did just as he-ought
et Elduine qui fu remès
and Edwin who was remained
qui ataindre ne l' pot as nès,
who reach not him could at-the ships
le regne Cadualan saisi
the realm (of-)Cadwallo seized
et castiax et tors abati,
and castles and towers struck-down
tères porprist, cités gasta,
lands occupied cities wasted
homes raienst, vile perça.
men ransomed town pierced
Suer bien li fu enditée,
Sister well to-him was pointed-out
à Guirecestre l'a trovée;
at Worcester her-he-has found
à Euruic la fist mener
to York her he-made lead
et dedens sa cambre garder,
and within his chamber keep
ne sai qui li ot amené.
not I-know who to-him had brought
Peluis qui fu d'Espaigne né,
Peluis who was of-Spain born
sages estoit de grant clergie,
wise he-was of great learning

si sot tote l'astronomie;
so knew all the-astronomy
al cors des estoiles luisans,
by-the course of-the stars shining
et al vol des oisiax volans
and by-the flight of-the birds flying
les avantures connissoit.
the adventures he-knew
Celes dont il s'entremetoit;
Those whereof he himself-busied
jà Cadualan rien n'atornast
ever Cadwallo anything not-would-prepare
que cil Elduine ne contast;
that that-one to-Edwin not would-tell
sovent se mist en mer al vent
often himself put into sea to-the wind
à grant navie et à grant gent,
with great fleet and with great folk
mais Elduine devant venoit,
but Edwin before came
qui la terre li desfendoit,
who the land against-him defended
car li devins li ensaignoit
for the soothsayer to-him showed
où et qant ariver quidoit.
where and when to-arrive he-thought
Cadualans ot grant maltalent
Cadwallo had great ill-will
que retornés ert si sovent;
that turned-back he-was so often

de sa tere l'orent sivi
from his land him-had followed
parent et sergant et ami;
kinsmen and sergeants and friends
si avoient guerpi pluisor
so had forsaken several
por lui lor terre et lor honor.
for him their land and their honor
A cels dist qu'en Bretaigne iroit
To those he-said that-into Brittany he-would-go
al roi Salemon parleroit;
to-the king Salomon would-speak
car il ert de son parenté
for he was of his kindred
et si l'avoit sovent mandé,
and so him-had often summoned
et il estoit de grant pooir.
and he was of great power
Tant ont siglé et main et soir
So-much they-have sailed both morning and evening
et à la lune et à l'oré
and by the moon and by the-breeze
qu'à Gerneron sont arrivé,
that-at Guernsey they-are arrived
une ille vers soloil colcant;
an isle toward sun setting
jo quit que d'iloc en avant
I think that from-there in forward

n'a nul autre tere u gent maigne
not-is any other land where folk dwell
entre Cornuaille et Bretaigne.
between Cornwall and Brittany
N'orent gaires iloc esté
Not-they-had much there been
li rois caï en enferté.
the king fell into infirmity
Malades fu de fievre ague
Sick he-was of fever acute
dont cil retorne ki bien sue;
whence that-one returns who well sweats
de venison a grant mestier
of venison he-has great need
voirement el ne pot mangier.
truly other not he-could eat
Li rois a Brien apelé,
The king has Brian called
prié li a et commandé
prayed him has and commanded
que car de venison li quière,
that meat of venison for-him he-seek
ne li caille de quel maniere;
nor to-him matter of what manner
jà ne venra à garison
ever not he-will-come to recovery
se il n'a car de venison.
if he not-has meat of venison

Briens fu del roi angoissos,
Brian was for-the king anguished
de lui garir fu désiros.
of him healing was desirous
Garçons appela et vallès,
Boys he-called and grooms
levriers fist mener et bracès;
greyhounds made lead and hounds
quistrent tant valées et plaines;
they-searched so-many valleys and plains
quistrent faloises et montaines.
they-searched cliffs and mountains
Toute la terre avironnèrent
All the land they-went-round
que cerf ne biche ne trovèrent,
that stag nor hind not they-found
ne lievre, ne dain, ne chevrel,
nor hare nor deer nor roebuck
dont en ot Brien mult grant duel.
whereof thereof had Brian very great grief
Quant oït que son oncle morroit
When he-heard that his uncle would-die
por venoison que il n'avoit,
for venison which he not-had
iriés fu, le coer a destroit,
angered he-was the heart he-has constrained
quant il vit que rien ne trovoit,
when he saw that anything not he-found
ne sot où il venison truisse,
nor knew where he venison might-find

un braon trança de sa quisse.
a flesh-piece he-cut from his thigh
Larder le fist et bien rostir
Lard it he-made and well roast
à son oncle le fist offrir;
to his uncle it made offer
jo ne sai se il en gosta,
I not know if he thereof tasted
mais il gari et respassa.
but he healed and recovered
Et dès qu'il pot sor piés ester
And as-soon that-he could on feet stand
ses nés a fait metre en la mer;
his ships he-has made put into the sea
en Quidelès arriva droit
into Quideles he-arrived straight
qui à cel tans cité estoit;
which at that time city was
entre Dunan et la marine,
between Dunan and the shore
et encore i pert la ruine.
and still there appears the ruin
Li uns des rois l'altre reçut
The one of-the kings the-other received
et honora que plus n'estut;
and honored that more not-was-needed
son herbergage et son sojor
his lodging and his sojourn
li fist avoir à grant honor.
to-him made have with great honor

Et à sa tere recovrer,
And to his land to-recover
se sor Elduine velt aler,
if upon Edwin he-wishes to-go
l'avancera il bonement
him-will-further he well
de son avoir et de sa gent.
with his wealth and with his folk
Tot l'iver ont ensamble esté
All the-winter they-have together been
et à grant joie sojorné.
and with great joy sojourned
Entre tant ont nés porcacies
In-the meanwhile they-have ships procured
et quises et aparillies;
and sought and prepared
en Engleterre ont envoie
into England they-have sent
en tapinage apparillie,
in disguise prepared
Briant por le devin ocire
Brian for the soothsayer to-kill
qui tot savoit lor estre dire;
who all knew-how their state to-say
puis parlé ont et bien enquis
then spoken they-have and well inquired
que tant com li devins ert vis,
that as-long as the soothsayer will-be alive
en Engletere ne colront,
into England not they-will-run

n'en païs n'i ariveront.
nor-in country not-there will-arrive
Bien set dire en quel port et quant
Well he-knows-how to-say in which port and when
cil tornent, quant il vont najant;
those turn when they go sailing
s'il se velt prendre et doner qure
if-he himself wishes to-take and to-give care
qui ens se mist en avanture.
who in himself put in adventure
A Barbeflue en mer entra
At Barfleur into sea he-entered
et à Suhantone arriva;
and at Southampton arrived
ses dras por plus povres canja
his clothes for more poor he-changed
et povrement s'aparilla.
and poorly himself-arrayed
Un baston fist faire férin
A staff he-made make of-iron
come bordon à pélerin;
like staff of pilgrim
li fers en fu lons et agus
the iron thereof was long and sharp
et bien trançans et esmolus.
and well cutting and ground
Briens se mist en tapinage
Brian himself put in disguise
com hom em pélerinage;
as man on pilgrimage

par la gent s'aloit desvoiant,
through the folk himself-went straying
bien sambloit povre pénéant;
well he-seemed poor penitent
au baston s'aloit apoiant
on-the staff himself-went leaning
d'ores en autres clopingnant.
from-hours to others limping
Tant quist la cort et demanda
So-much he-sought the court and asked
qu'en Euroïc le roi trova.
that-in York the king he-found
Entre les povres s'embati
Among the poor himself-thrust
comme pélerin se tapi;
as pilgrim himself hid
désatornés fu et fradous
unkempt he-was and ragged
bien sambloit home mendios.
well he-seemed man begging
Sa suer est d'une cambre issue
His sister is from-a chamber come-out
et Briens l'a bien connéue,
and Brian her-has well known
en ses mains un bacin tenoit,
in her hands a basin she-held
à la roine eve querroit.
for the queen water she-sought

Briens s'embati en sa voie
Brian himself-thrust into her way
qu'ele conuise et qu'ele le voie:
that-she know and that-she him see
la suer ot le frère entercie
the sister had the brother recognized
mais il li a dit et clugnie
but he to-her has said and winked
qu'ele ne face nul samblant
that-she not make any show
qu'el le connaisse tant ne qant.
that-she him know so-much nor how-much
Il l'a baisie et ele lui,
He her-has kissed and she him
assés plorèrent ambedui.
plenty wept both
De fors la presse se sunt trait
From outside the press themselves are drawn
que hom ne feme ne's agait,
that man nor woman not-them watch
ele li a tot l'estre dit
she to-him has all the-state told
et si li a mostré Pellit.
and so to-him has shown Peluis
Le devin qui estoit venus
The soothsayer who was come
par aventure est fors issus;
by chance is out gone
sovent venoit, sovent aloit,
often he-came often went

entre les povres trespassoit.
among the poor passed
Briens parti de sa soror
Brian parted from his sister
qui por lui ert à grant paor;
who for him was in great fear
en la voie al devin s'a mis
in the way of-the soothsayer himself-has put
qui passoit entre les mendis.
who passed among the beggars
Tant atendi et agaita
So-long he-waited and watched
que li devins lès lui passa;
that the soothsayer beside him passed
del baston de fer qu'il tint grant
with-the staff of iron which-he held great
li dona tel cop, en botant,
to-him gave such blow in thrusting
parmi le cors li embati,
through the body to-him thrust
forment l'empaint et il caï,
strongly him-pushes and he fell
onques ne dist ne oil ne non,
ever not said neither yes nor no
et Briens laie le bordon.
and Brian leaves the staff
Sans le baston, tot coïement
Without the staff all quietly
se traist contre la povre gent,
himself drew toward the poor folk

si qu'il ne l'a apercéu,
so that-one not him-has perceived
ne entercié ne connéu.
nor recognized nor known
Le jor s'est alez demuçant,
The day himself-is gone hiding
antre les povres trestornant.
among the poor turning-about
La nuit issi de la cité
The night he-went-out from the city
tot soavet et à celé,
all softly and in secret
de la contrée s'esloingna.
from the country himself-distanced
Tant fu cointes, tant esploita
So he-was clever so-much he-sped
à Sesecestre vint sor Esse:
to Exeter he-came on Exe
es vous environ lui la presse
behold you around him the press
des Bretons, des Cornualois,
of-the Britons of-the Cornish
de chevaliers et des borjois,
of knights and of-the burghers
demande li où vient, où vait,
they-ask him whence he-comes where goes
que velt, que dit, que quiert, que fait?
what he-wishes what says what seeks what does

De Cadualan vont demandant
Of Cadwallo they-go asking
où et porquoi demore tant?
where and why he-delays so-long
Die le voir quant revendra
Let-him-tell the truth when he-will-return
et quant il s'en repaiera:
and when he himself-thence will-return
oil, dist Bruiant, assez tost
yes said Brian quite soon
le verroiz venir à cel ost:
him you-will-see come with that host
jà Erguin ne l'atandra
ever Edwin not him-will-await
ne el regne ne remanra.
nor in-the realm not will-remain
Por amor le roi mainte foiz
For love (of-)the king many-a time
vos a domagiez et destroiz;
you he-has harmed and distressed
prandes, dist-il, castiax et tors,
take said-he castles and towers
car jusqu'à poi aurés socors.
for within little you-will-have succor
Briens a as pluisors parlé,
Brian has to-the many spoken
des Bretons sot la volenté;
of-the Britons knew the will
Essecestre prist et saisi,
Exeter he-took and seized

tenir le valt, si l'a garni.
to-hold it he-wished so it-he-has garrisoned
A son oncle a Briens mandé
To his uncle has Brian sent-word
quoi et coment il a olvré;
what and how he has wrought
tot son afaire li manda,
all his affair to-him sent
et li rois son oire apresta.
and the king his journey prepared
Li rois Salemons ses cosins,
The king Salomon his cousin
que des siens que de ses voisins,
as-well of-the his-own as of his neighbors
li livra deux mil chevaliers,
to-him delivered two thousand knights
estre sergans et mariniers.
besides sergeants and mariners
A Totenois vinrent siglant,
To Totnes they-came sailing
lie en furent li paisant.
glad thereof were the peasants
Li rois Elduine dolanz fu
The king Edwin grieved was
del bon devin qu'il ot perdu,
for-the good soothsayer whom-he had lost
et que sa cité a Brians
and that his city has Brian
prise, de quoi il est dolans.
taken of what he is grieved

Péanda li rois de Melcie,
Penda the king of Mercia
ce ert d'Angleterre partie,
this was of-England part
a envoié à grant esfors
has sent with great force
por garder la tère et les pors
for to-guard the land and the ports
et por Essecestre asséoir,
and for Exeter to-besiege
s'autrement ne la puet avoir.
if-otherwise not it he-can have
Péanda Essecestre assist,
Penda Exeter besieged
dedens valt entrer mais non fist.
within he-wished to-enter but not did
Briens fu dedens qui la tint,
Brian was within who it held
tant que Cadualan li rois vint;
until that Cadwallo the king came
à Toteneis estoit venus
to Totnes he-was come
et de ses nés estoit issus.
and from his ships was gone-out
Les noveles a demandée
The news he-has asked
à cels qui bien li ont contée
of those who well to-him have told
que Briens ses niés est assis,
that Brian his nephew is besieged

pendus sera s'il i est pris.
hanged he-will-be if-he there is taken
Il fu de Brien angoissos
He was for Brian anguished
et de le socolre curios;
and of him succoring eager
tant chevalcha o ses vassax,
so-much he-rode with his vassals
que bois, que plains, que monz, que vax,
as-well woods as plains as mounts as vales
al siege vint, com il ains pot,
to-the siege came as he first could
Dex! quel joie Briens en ot.
God what joy Brian thereof had
Cavalans a rices maisnies
Cadwallo has rich households
mult noblement aparillies;
very nobly arrayed
quatre conrois a establis
four troops he-has established
puis a cels de l'ost asaillis.
then has those of the-host assailed
Mult i ot de pris et de mors
Many there were of taken and of dead
des plus rices et des plus fors;
of-the most rich and of-the most strong
Péanda meismes fu pris
Penda himself was taken
mais ne fu navrés ne ocis.
but not was wounded nor killed

Bien fu tenus et bien gardés
Well he-was held and well guarded
ne pot mie estre delivrés,
not could at-all be freed
de si qu'il fist al roi homage
until so that-he did to-the king homage
et de lui tint son éritage.
and of him held his heritage
De son fie li a fait lejance,
Of his fief to-him has made allegiance
et por faire ferme aliance
and for to-make firm alliance
et por tenir feel amor,
and for to-hold faithful love
prist Cadualans une soror
took Cadwallo a sister
que Péanda avoit mult bele,
which Penda had very fair
france et cortoise damoisele.
noble and courteous damsel
Et Cadualans Bretons manda,
And Cadwallo Britons summoned
mult les blandi et mercia
much them flattered and thanked
de lor travail et del labor
for their toil and for-the labor
qu'il orent sofert por s'amor.
which-they had suffered for his-love

Tot ala gastant le païs
All he-went wasting the country
là où il sot ses anemis;
there where he knew his enemies
l'eve del Hombre trespassa,
the-water of-the Humber he-crossed
castiax prist et viles préa.
castles took and towns plundered
Elduine manda tos ses rois
Edwin summoned all his kings
qui Saisne estoient et Englois;
who Saxons were and English
pluisor qui roi clamé estoient.
several who king called were
Por roiame conté tenoient.
For realm county they-held
Elduine les ot entor soi
Edwin them had around himself
que par homage, que par foi.
as-well by homage as by faith
Contre Cadualan cevalça
Against Cadwallo rode
qui assés poi le redota,
who quite little him feared
en un camp qui Elfede a non,
in a field which Elfede has name
fu li bataille et li tençon
was the battle and the strife
entre Cadualan et Elduine,
between Cadwallo and Edwin

là il avoit mortel haïne.
there it had mortal hatred
Helduine fu mors et ses fils
Edwin was dead and his son
qui estoit appelés Esfris;
who was called Esfris
et mors fu li rois d'Orquenie
and dead was the king of-Orkney
qui venus fu en lor aïe;
who come was in their aid
grans fu et li glaive et l'ocise
great was both the sword and the-slaughter
dont Cadualan fist la justise.
whereof Cadwallo made the justice
Cels destruit et lor parenté
Those destroys and their kindred
qui contre lui orent esré,
who against him had acted
femes fist destruire et enfans
women made destroy and children
neis les petis alaitans;
even the little sucklings
d'Elduine remest uns oirs
of-Edwin remained an heir
qui ot la tere et les manoirs,
who had the land and the manors
Offris ot non em baptestire,
Offris had name in baptism

mais Cadualan à son empire
but Cadwallo with his empire
guere et estrif contre lui prist
war and strife against him took
et dels siens neuex li ocist,
and two his-own nephews to-him killed
14740 por ce que el raine partoient
for this that in-the realm they-shared
et rois après estre devoient.
and kings after be were-to
N'i laissa qu'il péust trover
Not-there he-left whom-he could find
qui érité déust garder.
who heritage ought keep

Oswald, Penda, and Cadwallader

XVII

Oswald, a Christian king, is driven to Scotland; at Heavenfield he raises a cross, his men confess, and he routs Penda, but Penda returns and martyrs him, and Oswy, his brother, buys peace from Cadwallo. When Oswy does not come to Cadwallo's Pentecost court, Penda asks leave to attack him; Margadu counsels letting the English destroy each other, and Oswy kills Penda. Cadwallo reigns forty-eight years, dies in London, and is set in a copper horseman over a gate. In the reign of Cadwallader, his son, famine and plague empty the land, and he flees to King Alan in Brittany; the English call in their kin from Saxony and keep their own names and laws, and Athelstan is the first king of all England. A divine voice sends Cadwallader to Rome, where he dies, and Ivor and Yni lead the remnant of the Britons, now called Welsh, who never hold Logres again. Wace finished his romance in 1155.

Osgal emprès uns rices ber,
Oswald after a rich baron
por crestiene loi garder,
for Christian law to-keep
un nobles rois de halt parage,
a noble king of high parentage
ot le raine par heritage;
had the realm by heritage
mais Cadualan le guerroia
but Cadwallo him warred-on
et vers Escoce le caça.
and toward Scotland him chased
Quant il vit que si le suioit
When he saw that so him he-followed
et que ataindre ne l' poroit,
and that reach not him he-could

ne l' valt mie plus lonc cachier
not him wished at-all more long to-chase
ne ses homes plus travillier:
nor his men more to-weary
partie de sa gent livra
part of his folk he-delivered
à Péanda, si li rova
to Penda so him asked
qu'il le sivit od l'aparel.
that-he him follow with the-array
Osgal l'oï, s'in prist consel
Oswald it-heard so-thereof took counsel
que por Péanda ne fuiroit
that for Penda not he-would-flee
et contre lui se combatroit.
and against him himself would-fight
Enmi un camp sunt aresté
Amid a field they-are halted
que Henefede ont apelé;
which Heavenfield they-have called
Henefede cis nons englois,
Heavenfield this name English
celestiels cans en françois.
heavenly field in French
El camp fist une crois lever
In-the field he-made a cross raise
et à ses homes commander:
and to his men command
batez corpes, merci criez,
beat guilts mercy cry

de voz pechiez vos repantez
of your sins you repent
et del mesfet pardon querez.
and of-the misdeed pardon seek
Fetes vos humblement confès,
Make you humbly confessed
que que il vos aviegne après,
whatever that it to-you befall after
plus aséur estre porront
more secure be will-be-able
cil qui vivront ou qui morront.
those who will-live or who will-die
Cil firent son commandement;
Those did his command
à jenoillons vinrent sovent,
to knees came often
od simples cors, od simples vois,
with simple bodies with simple voices
Deu aorèrent et la crois;
God worshiped and the cross
à dame Deu merci requisent
of lord God mercy asked
et desipline iloques prisent.
and discipline there took
Puis sont apresté de combatre
Then are ready of fighting
se alcuns velt sor als embatre.
if anyone wishes upon them to-thrust
Péanda vint si's assailli,
Penda came so-them assailed

mais malement li meschaï,
but badly him mishappened
que de sa gent le mius perdi,
for of his folk the best he-lost
et il meisme s'enfui.
and he himself himself-thence-fled
Le coer od gros et d'ire plain,
The heart had big and of-wrath full
plaindre s'ala à Cadualain:
complain himself-went to Cadwallo
jamais, ce dist, ne l'ameroit
ever this he-said not him-would-love
ne de lui tere ne tendroit,
nor of him land not would-hold
se d'Osgal ne li fait venjance
if on-Oswald not for-him he-makes vengeance
qui li a fait si grant pesance.
who to-him has done so great grief
Quant il porent, gent asamblèrent
When they could folk they-assembled
en Northumberlande passèrent;
into Northumberland they-crossed
encontre Osgal se combatirent,
against Oswald themselves fought
d'ambes deus pars mult i perdirent.
of-both two sides much there they-lost
Et Péanda Osgal trova
And Penda Oswald found
mult le haï, se l' martira.
much him hated so him martyred

C'est saint Oswalon li martirs,
It-is saint Oswald the martyr
el ciel monta ses sains espirs.
to-the heaven mounted his holy spirit
Mult i fu la tère déserte
Much there was the land deserted
et des homes grande li perte.
and of-the men great the loss
Fames veves, viles gastées,
Wives widowed towns wasted
citez vuides, proies menées.
cities emptied booty led
Un des frères Osgal Asgui
One of-the brothers (of-)Oswald Oswy
la tère son frère saisi;
the land (of-)his brother seized
cil del raine l'ont recéu
those of-the realm him-have received
qui lor signor orent perdu.
who their lord had lost
Cil vit la gent mult apovrie
That-one saw the folk much impoverished
et la tere mult afoiblie;
and the land much weakened
vit la force Cadualan grant,
saw the force (of-)Cadwallo great
et Cadualan fort et puissant;
and Cadwallo strong and mighty

vit que tenir ne se poroit
saw that hold not himself he-could
se Cadualan l'envaïssoit.
if Cadwallo him-attacked
Mius velt baissier sa dinité
Better he-wishes to-lower his dignity
et humilier de son gré
and humble of his will
que à tel home guerre prandre,
than with such man war take
dont il ne se péut desfandre.
whereof he not himself could defend
A Cadualan prist parlement,
With Cadwallo he-took parley
mult li dona or et argent;
much to-him gave gold and silver
en sa baillie se somist
into his keeping himself submitted
homage et féuté li fist;
homage and fealty to-him did
son raine de lui reconnut
his realm of him acknowledged
et Cadualan son fié lui crut:
and Cadwallo his fief to-him increased
ensi fu li pais créantée
thus was the peace granted
qui longement fu puis gardée.
which long was afterward kept

Osgal ot parens et nevox
Oswald had kinsmen and nephews
asés vaillans et asés prox
quite valiant and quite brave
qui por avoir part de la tère
who for to-have part of the land
prisent entr'ax estrif et guerre.
took between-them strife and war
Mais Osgui bien se desfendi,
But Oswy well himself defended
tote la tere lor toli,
all the land from-them took
de si al Humbre les caça,
up so-far to-the Humber them chased
et cil vinrent à Péanda
and those came to Penda
qui fors hom estoit, si li disent.
who strong man was so to-him said
Et pais et trive li pramisent,
And peace and truce to-him promised
si's maintenist et consillast
so-them he-maintain and counsel
et Osgui por als travillast.
and Oswy for them trouble
Péanda dist qu'il n'oseroit
Penda said that-he not-would-dare
se Cadualan ne l' consentoit;
if Cadwallo not it consented

n'oseroit guerre commenchier
not-he-would-dare war begin
ne la pais enfraindre et perchier,
nor the peace break and pierce
mais il querroit se il pooit,
but he would-seek if he could
que Cadualan l'otrieroit.
that Cadwallo it-would-grant
A une Pantecoste avint
At a Pentecost it-befell
que Cadualan feste et cort tint.
that Cadwallo feast and court held
A Londres se fist coroner
At London himself made crown
et ses barons à lui mander;
and his barons to him summon
Osgui n'i fu mie venus,
Oswy not-there was at-all come
ne sai por quoi fu detenus.
not I-know for what he-was detained
Ne sai s'il ne valt u ne pot
Not I-know if-he not wished or not could
u Cadualan mandé ne l'ot.
or Cadwallo summoned not him-had
Péanda em piès si dreça,
Penda on feet himself raised
al roi Cadualan demanda
of-the king Cadwallo asked

que povoit estre, que devoit
what could be what it-meant
que Osgui à sa cort n'estoit;
that Oswy at his court not-was
tuit i estoint li baron
all there were the barons
et li Englois et li Saisson,
both the English and the Saxons
et Osgui n'i voloit venir,
and Oswy not-there wished to-come
ne ne voloit le roi servir:
nor not wished the king to-serve
essoine, dist li rois, le tient,
excuse said the king him holds
en enferté est se devient.
in infirmity he-is if it-befalls
Dist Péanda: n'est pas issi,
Said Penda not-it-is at-all so
vous connissiés petit Osgui:
you know little Oswy
il a en Saissone envoié,
he has into Saxony sent
por gent à ceval et à pié.
for folk on horse and on foot
Gent porcace, soldiers quiert
Folk he-procures hirelings seeks
dusqu'il porra et lius en iert;
until-he will-be-able and place thereof will-be
grant guerre voura esmouvoir,
great war he-will-wish to-stir

ne vient, ne ne puet pas avoir.
not he-comes nor not can at-all have
Mais s'il ne vous pesoit, jo voel
But if-it not you grieved I wish
aler abatre son orgoel.
go strike-down his pride
Se jo vostre congie en ai,
If I your leave thereof have
ou vis ou mors vous le randrai
either alive or dead to-you him I-shall-render
et sa terre vous liverrai.
and his land to-you I-shall-deliver
Dist Cadualan: j'en parlerai.
Said Cadwallo I-thereof shall-speak
Tos fist les Englois fors issir,
All made the English out go
et Péanda en fist partir.
and Penda thence made depart
Des Bretons retint les aisnés,
Of-the Britons he-retained the eldest
les plus cointes, les plus senés;
the most clever the most wise
la requeste lor a mostrée,
the request to-them he-has shown
que Péanda ot demandée.
which Penda had asked
Lès Cadualan sist Margadu
Beside Cadwallo sat Margadu
qui des Surgales sire fu:
who of-the South-Welsh lord was

pieça, dist-il, que commença
long-ago said-he that began
la discorde qui mult dura,
the discord which much lasted
l'ire mortex et li haange
the-wrath mortal and the hatred
comment q'à la parfin en prange
however that-at the end thereof it-take
encontre nous Bretons Englois
against us Britons English
de guerroier somes tot frois.
of warring we-are all fresh
Jà Englois ne nous ameront,
Ever English not us will-love
ne jà foi ne nous porteront:
nor ever faith not to-us will-bear
manbre vos de lor felenies,
remember you of their felonies
manbre vos de lor tricheries.
remember you of their treacheries
Membre vous de lor cruelté,
Remember you of their cruelty
com il vous ont sovent grevé.
how they you have often harmed
Sovent avés dit et juré,
Often you-have said and sworn
mais vous l'avés tost oblié,
but you it-have soon forgotten
que se chacier les poiés,
that if chase them you-could

em Bretaigne ne's laisseriés.
in Britain not-them you-would-leave
Quant vous destruise ne's volés,
Since you destroy not-them wish
u puet cel estre vous n'osés.
or may that be you not-dare
Laiés l'un à l'altre honir
Let the-one to the-other shame
et si's metés el covenir.
and so-them leave to-the outcome
Péanda est des Englois nés
Penda is of-the English born
et il et tous ses parentés,
both he and all his kindreds
Osgui est englois ansement.
Oswy is English likewise
N'aiés vous jà nul mal talent
Not-have you ever any ill will
se l'uns mastins l'altre pelice,
if the-one mastiff the-other skins
car andui sunt plain de malice;
for both are full of malice
laissiez l'un à l'autre estrangler
let the-one to the-other strangle
et l'un à l'autre defoler.
and the-one to the-other trample
A la parole Margadu
To the word (of-)Margadu
se sont tuit li Breton tenu.
themselves are all the Britons held

Dont fu Péanda apelés,
Then was Penda called
tos plains congiés li fu donés
all full leave to-him was given
d'Osgui faire mal, s'il pooit,
of-Oswy do harm if-he could
jà Cadualan n'en gonceroit.
ever Cadwallo not-thereof would-complain
Péanda est de cort tornés
Penda is from court turned
orgillos fu et sorquidés;
proud he-was and arrogant
aigrement Osgui guerroia,
bitterly Oswy he-warred-on
mal li fist, mal li porcaça,
ill to-him he-did ill to-him contrived
et Osgui li manda sovant
and Oswy to-him sent often
pais et trive et acordemant;
peace and truce and accord
que pais et trive li tenist
that peace and truce with-him he-keep
et damage ne li féist.
and damage not to-him do
Or et argent se il voloit
Gold and silver if he wished
et autres avoirs li donroit;
and other goods to-him he-would-give

Péanda dist que non fera
Penda said that not he-will-do
ne jamais à lui pais n'ara.
nor ever with him peace not-will-have
Osgui ne fu mie malvais,
Oswy not was at-all base
quant vit que il n'i pora pais,
when he-saw that he not-there will-be-able peace
ne concorde, ne trieve prandre,
nor concord nor truce take
si s'atorna de lui desfendre.
so himself-prepared of himself defending
L'ire monta et engroissa,
The-wrath mounted and swelled
la guerre crut et espoissa.
the war grew and thickened
Un jor se sunt entrecontré
One day themselves are encountered
et par ire se sunt mellé
and with wrath themselves are clashed
Osgui ot en Deu grant fiance
Oswy had in God great trust
mult ot en lui ferme croiance.
much he-had in him firm belief
Et Péanda mult s'orgilla,
And Penda much himself-swelled
ès grans maisnies se fia;
in-the great households himself trusted

mais desconfis fu et ocis
but defeated he-was and killed
et li pluisor de ses amis.
and the most of his friends
Offris qui fu ses aisnés fis
Offris who was his eldest son
à la cort Cadualan noris,
at the court (of-)Cadwallo nurtured
requist et ot son hiretage
asked and had his heritage
et en a fait le roi homage.
and thereof has done the king homage
Cadualans fu bons justiciers,
Cadwallo was good justiciar
loiax rois fu et droituriers;
loyal king he-was and righteous
huit ans et quarante tint terre
eight years and forty held land
assés i ot travail et guerre.
plenty there was toil and war
A Londres engrota et jut,
At London he-sickened and lay
iloc fina, iloc morut.
there ended there died
Breton orent grant dol de lui,
Britons had great grief for him
mais contre mort n'a nus refui.
but against death not-has anyone refuge

Por lui longement ramembrer
For him long to-remember
firent de coivre tresjeter
they-made of copper cast
un chevalier sor un cheval
a knight on a horse
en aparellement roial.
in array royal
Le cors le roi ont dedens mis;
The body (of-)the king they-have within put
puis l'ont sur une porte assis,
then it-have on a gate set
à Londres, devers Ocidant,
at London toward West
iloc estut bien longemant;
there it-stood very long
de joste ont fait une capele
of beside they-have made a chapel
de saint Martin, fu rice et bele.
of saint Martin it-was rich and fair
Cavalances après réna,
Cadwallader after reigned
fils Cadualan, niès Péanda,
son (of-)Cadwallo nephew (of-)Penda
niès Péanda, fiex sa serour,
nephew (of-)Penda son (of-)his sister
ce fu uns rois de grant valour.
this was a king of great valor

En son tans fu faute de blé
In his time was lack of grain
et en après fu la cherté
and in after was the dearth
que trois jors, peussiés ester
that three days you-could stand
n'i trovissiés que acater,
not-there you-would-find what to-buy
ne pain, ne blé, n'altre vitaille,
nor bread nor grain nor-other victual
tant par ert grans par tot li faille.
so much was great through all the want
De pissons et de salvecines,
Of fish and of game
et des herbes et des racines,
and of-the herbs and of-the roots
et de foilles de bois vivoient,
and of leaves of wood they-lived
altre viande n'en avoient.
other victuals not-thereof they-had
Après cele mésaventure,
After that misadventure
revint une altresi dure:
came-again one likewise hard
mortalité fu de la gent,
mortality was of the folk
par air corrompu et par vent;
by air corrupt and by wind

ès cans, es maisons, et as rues
in-the fields in-the houses and in-the streets
et as marciés et as karues,
and at-the markets and at-the plows
menjant, parlant, alant, chéoient
eating speaking walking they-fell
et si soudainement mouroient.
and so suddenly died
Mourent li viel, mourent enfans,
Die the old die children
mourent seigneurs, mourent servans.
die lords die servants
Muert le sire, muert la moillier,
Dies the lord dies the wife
muerent vilain et chevalier.
die villein and knight
Nul oïst au fil son père plaindre,
None would-hear to-the son his father lament
dont véissiés maisons remaindre.
then you-might-see houses remain
Les voies soltaines et gastes,
The ways solitary and waste
onques tel dolor n' agardastes.
ever such grief not you-beheld
Ne pooient pas foisoner,
Not they-could at-all suffice
li vif od les mors entérer;
the living with the dead to-bury

cil qui le mort entérer dut
that-one who the dead bury ought
avec le mort entéré jut.
with the dead buried lay
Cil qui porent fuir fuirent,
Those who could flee fled
lor fius et lor maisons guerpirent,
their fiefs and their houses forsook
tant por la grant chierté de blé,
as-much for the great dearth of grain
tant por la grant mortalité.
as-much for the great mortality
En sa maison a mal espoir
In his house has ill hope
qui là son voisin voit ardoir;
who there his neighbor sees burn
Caluanders qui rois estoit
Cadwallader who king was
et la tere garder devoit,
and the land guard ought
em Bretaigne la mer passa
into Brittany the sea crossed
al roi Alain qui mult l'ama;
to-the king Alan who much him-loved
niés Salemon avoit esté
nephew (of-)Salomon he-had been
qui mult avoit son père amé.
who much had his father loved

Il le reçut mult liement
He him received very gladly
et mult l'onora haltement.
and much him-honored highly
Ensi remest li rois vivant,
Thus remained the king living
mais mult avoit le cuer dolant
but much had the heart grieving
de sa gent qui ensi morut,
for his folk who thus died
et de ce que fuir l'estut.
and for this that flee him-behooved
Engletere fu apovrie,
England was impoverished
li blés falis, li gent périe;
the grain failed the folk perished
li plus del païs fu à gast
the most of-the country was in waste
qu'il n'i avoit qui gaagnast.
that-it not-there was who tilled
Huit ans et plus fu escillie
Eight years and more it-was ravaged
et de gaagnors voidie.
and of tillers emptied
Et li Breton qui là estoient,
And the Britons who there were
ès mons et ès forès antoient.
in-the mountains and in-the forests haunted
Et li Englois qui remès erent,
And the English who remained were

qui de la famine escapèrent,
who from the famine escaped
que por lor viles restorer,
as-well for their towns to-restore
que por lor teres laborer,
as for their lands to-till
ont en Saissone là mandé
have into Saxony there sent
où lor ancissor furent né,
where their ancestors were born
que od femes et od enfans,
that with wives and with children
od maisnies et od sergans
with households and with sergeants
vignent bien esforciement.
they-come very strongly
Tères aront à lor talent,
Lands they-will-have at their will
bones teres et gaagnement;
good lands and tillage
teres auront à gaaignier,
lands they-will-have to till
n'ont de rien fors d'omes mestier.
not-they-have of anything but of-men need
Cil vinrent espessement
Those came thickly
et grans compagnes et sovent,
and great companies and often
par les teres se herbergièrent.
through the lands themselves lodged

Mult crurent et monteplièrent;
Much they-grew and multiplied
ne trovèrent qui's destorbast,
nor they-found who-them hindered
ne qui la tere lor véast,
nor who the land to-them denied
espessement et sovent vinrent,
thickly and often they-came
les costumes et les lois tinrent
the customs and the laws they-held
que li lor ancissor tenoient
which the their ancestors held
en la terre dont il venoient.
in the land whence they came
Et tos les nons et les langages
And all the names and the languages
volrent tenir de lor linages:
they-wished to-hold of their lineages
por Keir vourent Cestre dire,
for Keir they-wished Chester to-say
et por sor firent nomer sire;
and for sor they-made name shire
et brief firent apeler tone,
and brief they-made call town
map en galois, en englois sone,
map in Welsh in English son
en galois est Keïr cité.
in Welsh is Keïr city
N'en fu brief vile, sor conté,
Not-thereof was brief town sor county

et auquant dient c'est contrée;
and some say it-is country
sor est en galois appelée,
sor is in Welsh called
ce que sire dist en englois
that which shire says in English
ce pot estre sor en galois.
this may be sor in Welsh
Entre Galois encore dure,
Among Welsh still lasts
de droit bretans li parleure
of right Breton the speech
les contes et les baronies,
the counties and the baronies
les contrées et les signoriés
the countries and the lordships
tindrent issi et devisèrent
they-held thus and divided
comme Breton les compassèrent.
as Britons them laid-out
A cel tans fu Adeptans rois,
At that time was Athelstan king
ce fu li premiers des Englois
this was the first of-the English
qui ot tote Engleterre an baille,
who had all England in keeping
fors seul Gales et Cornoailles.
except only Wales and Cornwall

Premiers fu enoins et sacrés
First he-was anointed and consecrated
et premièrement coronés.
and first crowned
Pluisor dient qu'il fu bastars,
Several say that-he was bastard
ses père fu li rois Euars
his father was the king Edward
qui por orer à Rome ala,
who for to-pray to Rome went
et à Saint Piere créanta,
and to Saint Peter granted
et sor l'altel en fist présant,
and on the-altar thereof made present
cascun an, un denier d'argant,
each year a penny of-silver
de cascun home ostel tenant,
of each man house holding
dedans sa baillie manans.
within his jurisdiction dwelling
Premierement ot fait cest don
First had made this gift
un siens ancestre, Igne ot non;
a his-own ancestor Ine had name
et tot li oir li ont rendu,
and all the heirs to-him have rendered
li don au père ont bien tenu.
the gift of-the father have well kept

Caluanders valt revertir
Cadwallader wished to-return
et tot son raine maintenir,
and all his realm maintain
qant sot que la tere ert poplée
when he-knew that the land was peopled
et la mortalité passée,
and the mortality passed
en sa terre valt repairier
into his land he-wished to-return
son oire fist aparillier,
his journey he-made prepare
puis pria Deu descortement
then prayed God discreetly
qu'il li féist demostrement
that-he to-him made showing
se ses repaires li plaisoit,
if his return him pleased
qar son plaisir faire voloit.
for his pleasure to-do he-wished
Une vois devine li dist
A voice divine to-him said
laiast ceste oire, autre prensist;
let-him-leave this journey other take
l'oire d'Engletere laiast,
the-journey of-England let-him-leave
à l'apostoire à Rome alast,
to the-pope at Rome go
ses peciés li ert pardonés,
his sins to-him would-be pardoned

s'ame ert od les bons eurés.
his-soul would-be with the good blessed
Et li Anglais Bretaigne aroient,
And the English Britain would-have
jà Breton n'i recoverroient
ever Britons not-there would-recover
de si là que la profesie
up so-far there that the prophecy
que Merlins dist soit acomplie.
which Merlin said be fulfilled
Ne jamais estre ne poroit
Nor ever be not could
de si là que li tans venroit,
up so-far there that the time would-come
que les reliques de son cors
that the relics of his body
de sepulture traites fors,
from sepulture drawn out
seroient de Rome aportées
would-be from Rome brought
et en Bretaigne présentées.
and in Britain presented
Caluanders se mervilla,
Cadwallader himself marveled
en mervillant se contorbla.
in marveling himself troubled
De tel devin anoncement
At such divine announcement
qu'il ot oï apertement;
which-he had heard openly

al roi Alain son bon ami
to-the king Alan his good friend
raconta ce qu'il ot oï. 15115
recounted that which-he had heard
Alains fist olvrir les armaires
Alan made open the book-chests
et fist venir clers et gramaires;
and made come clerks and grammarians
les estoires fist aporter
the histories he-made bring
et fist cherquier et fist prover
and made search and made prove
que c'est que Caluandres dist 15120
what it-is that Cadwallader said
de la vision que il vit,
of the vision which he saw
s'il concordoit as dis Merlin,
if-it agreed with-the sayings (of-)Merlin
et Aquile le bon devin,
and Aquile the good soothsayer
et à ce que Sebile dist.
and with that which Sibyl said
Caluanders pas el n'en fist, 15125
Cadwallader at-all otherwise not-thereof did
son navie et sa gent guerpi;
his fleet and his folk he-left
Ignor apela et Ygni,
Ivor he-called and Yni
Ignor fu ses fils de s'oïssor:
Ivor was his son of his-wife

en Gales, dist-il, passeroiz
into Wales said-he you-will-cross
et des Bretons seignor seroiz;
and of-the Britons lord you-will-be
que par defaute de seignor
that by lack of lord
n'aillent Breton à desenor
not-go Britons to dishonor
cil firent ce qu'il commanda
those did that which-he commanded
et il son oirre apareilla.
and he his journey prepared
A l'apostoile s'en ala,
To the-pope himself-thence went
li sains pere mult l'onora.
the holy father much him-honored
De son pecié se fist confès
Of his sin himself made confessed
et prist sa pénitance après.
and took his penance after
N'avoit gaires à Rome esté
Not-he-had much at Rome been
qant il caï en enferté.
when he fell into infirmity
Grans fu li max, morir l'estut;
Great was the ill die him-behooved
onze jors devant mai mourut.
eleven days before May he-died

Al disetisme jor d'avril
On-the seventeenth day of-April
issi del terien escil,
went-out from-the earthly exile
sis cens ans puis que Jhesu Crist
six hundred years since that Jesus Christ
en sainte Marie car prist.
in holy Mary flesh took
Li cors fu mult bien conréez
The body was very well arrayed
et antre les cors sainz posez.
and among the bodies holy laid
L'ame monta an paradis
The-soul mounted into paradise
où nous soïens o lui asis.
where we may-be with him seated
Ivor et Yni mer passèrent,
Ivor and Yni sea crossed
grant navie et grant gent menèrent.
great fleet and great folk led
Les remenailles des Bretons
The remnants of-the Britons
que nos or Galois apelons,
whom we now Welsh call
qui sont devers Septentrion,
who are toward North
furent an lor subjection;
were in their subjection

ainz puis ne furent del pooir
ever since not they-were of-the power
qu'il poissent Logres avoir.
that-they could Logres have
Tuit sont mué et tuit changie,
All are altered and all changed
tuit sont divers et fors lignie
all are different and out-of lineage
de noblesce, d'ennors, de mors,
of nobleness of-honors of manners
et de la vie as ancessors.
and of the life of-the ancestors
Gales, cist nons à Gales vint
Wales this name to Wales came
del duc Galon qui Gales tint;
from-the duke Galon who Wales held
ou de Galaës la raïne
or from Galaes the queen
à cui la terre fu ancline.
to whom the land was bowed
Ci falt la geste des Bretons
Here ends the chronicle of-the Britons
et la lignie des Barons
and the lineage of-the Barons
qui em Bretaigne primes vindrent
who into Britain first came
et Engleterre lonc tans tindrent.
and England long time held

Puis que Dex incarnassion
Since that God incarnation
prist, por nostre redemption,
took for our redemption
mil et cent cinquante cinq ans,
thousand and hundred fifty five years
fist maistre Gasse cest romans.
made master Wace this romance
